

# Notes on Exodus

2 0 1 0 E d i t i o n

**Dr. Thomas L. Constable**

## Introduction

### TITLE

The Hebrew title of this book (*we'elleh shemot*) originated from the ancient practice of naming a Bible book after its first word or words. "Now these are the names of" is the translation of the first two Hebrew words.

"The Hebrew title of the Book of Exodus, therefore, was to remind us that Exodus is the sequel to Genesis and that one of its purposes is to continue the history of God's people as well as elaborate further on the great themes so nobly introduced in Genesis."<sup>1</sup>

Exodus cannot stand alone in the sense that it would not make much sense without Genesis. The very first word of the book, translated "now," is a conjunction that means "and."

The English title "Exodus" is a transliteration of the Greek word *exodos* from the Septuagint translation meaning "exit," "way out," or "departure." The Septuagint translators gave the book this title because of the major event in it, namely, the Israelites' departure from Egypt.

"The exodus is the most significant historical and theological event of the Old Testament . . ."<sup>2</sup>

### DATE AND WRITER

Moses, who lived from about 1525 to 1405 B.C., wrote Exodus. He could have written it under the inspiration of the Holy Spirit any time after the events recorded (after about 1444 B.C.). He may have written it during the year the Israelites camped at the base of Mt. Sinai. He may have done so during the 38-year period of wandering in the wilderness following the Israelites' failure to enter the land from Kadesh Barnea (cf. Num. 13-14; ca. 1443-1405 B.C.). On the other hand he may have written it on the plains of Moab just before his death (cf. 16:35).<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Ronald Youngblood, *Exodus*, pp. 9-10.

<sup>2</sup>Eugene H. Merrill, *Kingdom of Priests*, p. 57.

<sup>3</sup>On the date of the Exodus, see my note at the end of 12:37-42; or John D. Hannah, "Exodus," in *The Bible Knowledge Commentary: Old Testament*, pp. 104-5. On the Mosaic authorship of Exodus, see my note on the writer of Genesis and the sources referred to there, in my notes on Genesis. Kenneth Kitchen, "The Old Testament in its Context: 2 From Egypt to the Jordan," *Theological Students' Fellowship Bulletin* (1971):4-8, also has helpful background information on the Mosaic authorship of Exodus, Leviticus, Numbers, and

## **SCOPE**

Exodus embraces about 431 years of history, from the arrival of Jacob and his family in Egypt (ca. 1876 B.C.) to the erection of the tabernacle in the wilderness of Sinai (ca. 1445 B.C.). However 1:1-7 is a review of Jacob's family. If we eliminate this section, the narrative resumes the story of the Israelites where Genesis ends, after the death of Joseph. About 364 years elapsed between the death of Joseph and the building of the tabernacle. The bulk of the book (chs. 3—40) deals with only two of these years, the year before and the year after the Exodus from Egypt. The Exodus event is clearly the focus of this book.

The Israelites lived in Egypt 430 years (12:40). Genesis 15:13 has the round number 400 years as the time of Israel's oppression in Egypt.<sup>4</sup>

## **PURPOSE**

"The purpose of the Book of Exodus is to celebrate God's gracious deliverance of His chosen people Israel from Egyptian slavery to the freedom of covenant relationship and fellowship with Him."<sup>5</sup>

## **GENRE**

Like Genesis, Exodus contains a mixture of literary genres, including narrative, poetry, legal, and cultic.<sup>6</sup>

## **IMPORTANCE**

"No other biblical book surfaces elsewhere in the OT as frequently as the Book of Exodus does; in the NT only the Books of Psalms and Isaiah are cited more, and that for the fairly obvious reasons of liturgy and messianism."<sup>7</sup>

"The deliverance of Israel out of Egypt by Yahweh in the Old Testament is parallel in importance to the resurrection of Christ in the New Testament. The historicity of these events is a critical foundation for a proper understanding of the rest of the Bible."<sup>8</sup>

---

Deuteronomy, as does Gleason L. Archer, "Old Testament History and Recent Archaeology from Moses to David," *Bibliotheca Sacra* 127:506 (April-June 1970):99-106.

<sup>4</sup>See the "Chronology Chart for Exodus" in John Davis, *Moses and the Gods of Egypt*, p. 14.

<sup>5</sup>Eugene H. Merrill, in *The Old Testament Explorer*, p. 41.

<sup>6</sup>Herbert M. Wolf, *An Introduction to the Old Testament Pentateuch*, p. 127.

<sup>7</sup>John I. Durham, *Exodus*, p. xxiii.

<sup>8</sup>J. Daniel Hays, "An Evangelical Approach to Old Testament Narrative Criticism," *Bibliotheca Sacra* 166:661 (January-March 2009):13.

**OUTLINE**

- I. The liberation of Israel 1:1—15:21
  - A. God's preparation of Israel and Moses chs. 1—4
    - 1. The growth of Jacob's family 1:1-7
    - 2. The Israelites' bondage in Egypt 1:8-22
    - 3. Moses' birth and education 2:1-10
    - 4. Moses' flight from Egypt to Midian 2:11-15
    - 5. Moses' life in Midian 2:16-25
    - 6. Moses' call 3:1—4:18
    - 7. Moses' return to Egypt 4:19-31
  - B. God's demonstrations of His sovereignty chs. 5—11
    - 1. Pharaoh's response to Moses and Aaron's initial request 5:1— 6:1
    - 2. Moses and Aaron's equipment as God's messengers 6:2—7:7
    - 3. The attestation of Moses and Aaron's divine mission 7:8-13
    - 4. The first three plagues 7:14—8:19
    - 5. The fourth, fifth, and sixth plagues 8:20—9:12
    - 6. The seventh, eight, and ninth plagues 9:13—10:29
    - 7. The proclamation of the tenth plague ch. 11
  - C. God's redemption of His people 12:1—13:16
    - 1. The consecration of Israel as the covenant nation 12:1-28
    - 2. The death of the first-born and the release of Israel 12:29-36
    - 3. The exodus of Israel out of Egypt 12:37-42
    - 4. Regulations concerning the Passover 12:43-51
    - 5. The sanctification of the first-born 13:1-16
  - D. God's completion of Israel's liberation 13:17—15:21
    - 1. The journey from Succoth to Etham 13:17-22
    - 2. Israel's passage through the Red Sea ch. 14
    - 3. Israel's song of deliverance 15:1-21
- II. The adoption of Israel 15:22—40:38
  - A. God's preparatory instruction of Israel 15:22—18:27
    - 1. Events in the wilderness of Shur 15:22-27
    - 2. Quails and manna in the wilderness of Sin ch. 16
    - 3. The lack of water at Rephidim 17:1-7
    - 4. The hostility of the Amalekites 17:18-36
    - 5. The friendliness of Jethro the Midianite ch. 18
  - B. The establishment of the Mosaic Covenant 19:1—24:11
    - 1. Preparation for the Covenant ch. 19
    - 2. The Ten Commandments 20:1-17

3. The response of the Israelites 20:18-21
4. The stipulations of the Book of the Covenant 20:22—23:33
5. The ratification of the Covenant 24:1-11
- C. Directions regarding God's dwelling among His people 24:12—31:18
  1. The revelation of these directions 24:12-18
  2. Contributions for the construction of the sanctuary 25:1-9
  3. The tabernacle furnishings 25:10-41
  4. The tabernacle structure ch. 26
  5. The tabernacle courtyard 27:1-19
  6. The investiture of the priests 27:20—28:43
  7. The consecration of the priests 29:1-37
  8. The service of the priests 29:38—30:38
  9. The builders of the tabernacle 31:1-11
  10. The sign of the Sabbath 31:12-18
- D. The breaking and renewing of the covenant chs. 32—34
  1. The failure of Israel ch. 32
  2. The re-establishment of fellowship ch. 33
  3. The renewal of the covenant ch. 34
- E. The construction and dedication of the objects used in Israel's worship chs. 35—40
  1. Preparations for construction 35:1—36:7
  2. Execution of the work 36:8—39:43
  3. The erection and consecration of the tabernacle ch. 40

In an interesting and original chart of Exodus, Ted Grove suggested the following structural outline of Exodus.<sup>9</sup>

- I. Israel's liberation chs. 1—18
  - A. Israel's affliction (Israel is Egypt's possession) 1:1—2:14
  - B. Deliverance 2:15—18:27

Ted saw the following chiastic structure in this section.

- |           |  |
|-----------|--|
| <b>A</b>  | Midian: Moses' commission 2:15—4:28            |
| <b>B</b>  | Enemy: Egypt defeated 4:29—15:21               |
| <b>C</b>  | Water: bitter to sweet and 12 springs 15:22-27 |
| <b>D</b>  | Food: manna and quail ch. 16                   |
| <b>C'</b> | Water: out of rock 17:1-7                      |
| <b>B'</b> | Enemy: Amalek defeated 17:8-16                 |
| <b>A'</b> | Midian: Moses accepts wisdom ch. 18            |

---

<sup>9</sup>Ted was a student in my Old Testament History I course in the spring of 1991.

- II. Israel's adoption chs. 19—40
- A. Covenant delivered 19:1—24:11
  - B. Sanctuary planned 24:12—31:18
  - C. Covenant broken ch. 32
  - D. Covenant renewed chs. 33—34
  - E. Sanctuary's construction 35:1—40:33
  - F. Covenant sealed (Israel is God's possession) 40:34-38

Ted also saw a chiasm in this part of the book.

- A** Covenant delivered 19:1—24:11
  - B** Tabernacle planned 24:12—27:21
    - C** Priestly instructions chs. 28—30
      - D** Craftsmen's direction 31:1-11
        - E** Sabbath instructions 31:12-18
          - F** Covenant broken ch. 32
            - F'** Covenant renewed chs. 33—34
              - E'** Sabbath reminded 35:1-3
                - D'** Craftsmen and construction 35:4—38:31
                  - C'** Priests prepared ch. 39
                    - B'** Tabernacle completed 40:1-33
                      - A'** Covenant sealed 40:34-38

The center of the first chiasm is the manna. The center of the second chiasm is the tablets of the Law. These were the two items God instructed Moses to preserve in the ark of the covenant.

Ted saw the key verse of the book as 34:9.

## Exposition

### **I. THE LIBERATION OF ISRAEL 1:1—15:21**

"The story of the first half of Exodus, in broad summary, is Rescue. The story of the second half, in equally broad summary, is Response, both immediate response and continuing response. And binding together and undergirding both Rescue and Response is Presence, the Presence of Yahweh from whom both Rescue and Response ultimately derive."<sup>10</sup>

#### **A. GOD'S PREPARATION OF ISRAEL AND MOSES CHS. 1—4**

##### **1. The growth of Jacob's family 1:1-7**

The purposes of this section are three at least.

1. These verses introduce the Israelites who are the focus of attention in Exodus.
2. They also tie the Israelites back to Jacob and explain their presence in Egypt.
3. They account for the numerical growth of the Israelites during the 360 years that elapsed between Genesis and Exodus following Joseph's death and preceding Moses' birth.

Moses used the round number 70 for the number of Jacob's descendants when the patriarch entered Egypt (v. 5; cf. Gen. 46:27).<sup>11</sup> The writer's purpose was to contrast the small number of Israelites that entered Egypt with the large number that existed at the time Exodus begins (vv. 8ff.), about two million individuals (cf. 12:37; 38:26; Num. 1:45-47). It is quite easy to prove mathematically that Jacob's family of 70 that moved into Egypt could have grown into a nation of two million or more individuals in 430 years.<sup>12</sup>

The fruitfulness of the Israelites in Goshen was due to God's blessing as He fulfilled His promises to the patriarchs (v. 7).

##### **2. The Israelites' bondage in Egypt 1:8-22**

This pericope serves a double purpose. It introduces the rigorous conditions under which the Egyptians forced the Israelites to live, and it sets the stage for the birth of Moses.

- 1:8-14        The new king (v. 8) may have been Ahmose (Greek Amosis) who founded the eighteenth dynasty and the New Kingdom and ruled from 1570 to 1546 B.C. However, he was probably one of Ahmose's immediate successors, Amenhotep I or, most likely, Thutmose I. The Egyptian capital

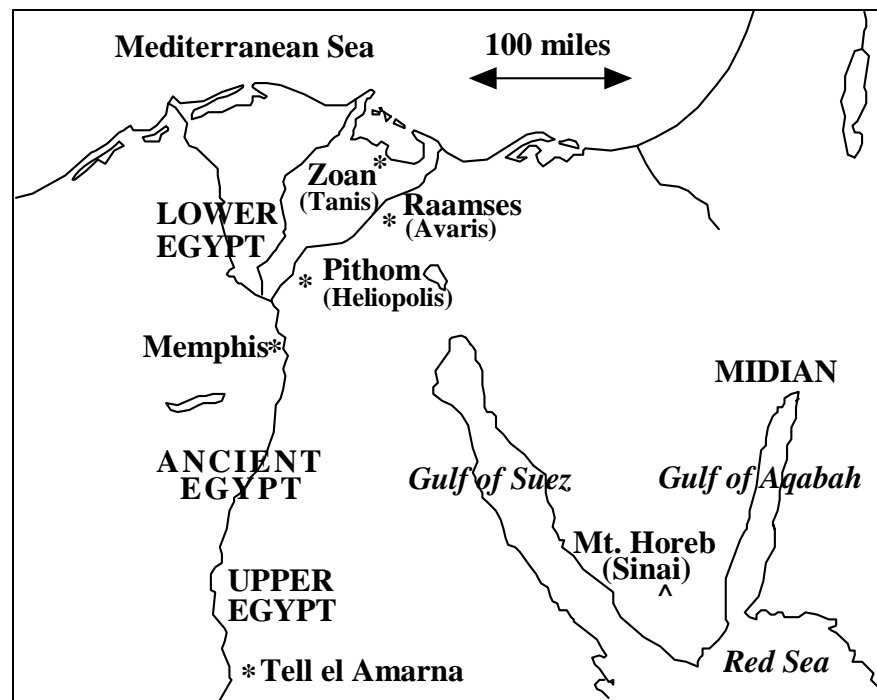
<sup>10</sup>Durham, p. xxiii.

<sup>11</sup>For a good short history of Egypt, see Hannah, pp. 105-7; Youngblood, pp. 20-25, or Siegfried Schwantes, *A Short History of the Ancient Near East*, pp. 51-109.

<sup>12</sup>See Ralph D. Winter, "The Growth of Israel in Egypt (The Phenomenon of Exponential Growth)," a paper published by the Institute of International Studies, Pasadena, Ca., 14 April 1993.

at this time was Zoan (Gr. Tanis). Ahmose was the first native Egyptian Pharaoh for many years. Preceding him was a series of Hyksos rulers.<sup>13</sup> The name Hyksos probably means "rulers of foreign lands."<sup>14</sup> They were a Semitic people from the northern part of the Fertile Crescent who had invaded Egypt about 1670 B.C. and ruled until Ahmose expelled them. The New Kingdom (ca. 1570-1085 B.C.) that Ahmose inaugurated was the period of greatest imperial might in Egypt's long history.

"In the Late Bronze Age [ca. 1500-1200 B.C.], Egypt entered her period of Empire, during which she was unquestionably the dominant nation of the world. Architects of the Empire were the Pharaohs of the Eighteenth Dynasty, a house that was founded as the Hyksos were expelled from Egypt and that retained power for some two hundred and fifty years (ca. 1570-1310), bringing to Egypt a strength and a prestige unequalled in all her long history."<sup>15</sup>



<sup>13</sup>See Aharon Kempinski, "Jacob in History," *Biblical Archaeology Review* 14:1 (January-February 1988):42-47.

<sup>14</sup>John Van Seters, *The Hyksos*, p. 187.

<sup>15</sup>John Bright, *A History of Israel*, p. 98.

The title "Pharaoh" means "great house." It originally designated the Egyptian king's residence and household. It became a title for the king himself for the first time in the eighteenth dynasty.<sup>16</sup>

The implication of the statement that Pharaoh "did not know Joseph" in the Hebrew text is that he did not know him because he did not want to know about him. It seems that the early kings of the eighteenth dynasty wanted to solidify control of Egypt in the hands of native Egyptians. After a long period of control by foreigners, they did not want to acknowledge the greatness of Joseph who was, of course, also a foreigner and a Semite.

"Forgetfulness of Joseph brought the favour shown to the Israelites by the kings of Egypt to a close."<sup>17</sup>

### IDENTIFICATIONS OF SIGNIFICANT PHAROHS AFTER JOSEPH AND IN EXODUS<sup>18</sup>

SECOND INTERMEDIATE PERIOD (dynasties 15-16; ca. 1674-1567 B.C.). Capital: Avaris (Raamses). Period of Hyksos rule.

NEW KINGDOM (dynasties 17-20; ca. 1570-1085 B.C.). Capital: Tanis (Zaan). Period of imperial supremacy.

**Ahmose** (Amosis; 1570-1546 B.C.; 1st Pharaoh of 18th dynasty) expelled the Hyksos and re-established native Egyptian rule.

**Thutmose I** (Thutmosis I; 1525-ca. 1512 B.C.; 3rd Pharaoh of 18th dynasty) practiced genocide on Hebrew male babies (Exod. 1:15-22).

**Hatshepsut** (1503-1482 B.C.; 5th Pharaoh of the 18th dynasty) was the daughter of Pharaoh Thutmose I who drew Moses out of the Nile and later ruled as Queen (Exod. 2:5).

**Thutmose III** (1504-1450 B.C.; 6th Pharaoh of the 18th dynasty) was the Pharaoh of the oppression who tried to kill Moses and from whom Moses fled into Midian (Exod. 2:15).

**Amenhotep II** (1450-1425 B.C.; 7th Pharaoh of the 18th dynasty) was the Pharaoh of the plagues and the Exodus (Exod. 3:10—15:19).

Pharaoh launched three successive plans to reduce the threat of the sizable Hebrew population that then was larger and stronger than the Egyptian ruling class (v. 9).

The first plan (plan A) was to make the Hebrews toil hard in manual labor. Normally a population grows more slowly under oppression than in

<sup>16</sup>Walter C. Kaiser Jr., "Exodus," in *Genesis-Numbers*, vol. 2 of *The Expositor's Bible Commentary*, p. 288.

<sup>17</sup>C. F. Keil and Franz Delitzsch, *Biblical Commentary on the Old Testament: Pentateuch*, 1:421.

<sup>18</sup>Based on the *Cambridge Ancient History*. All identifications are probable.

prosperous times. However the opposite took place in the case of the Israelites (v. 12). Physical oppression also tends to crush the spirit, and in this objective the Egyptians were somewhat successful (2:23-24).

Verse 10 should read as follows. "Let us (the entire Egyptian ruling class) deal wisely with them (the Israelites) lest they . . . in the event of war (with enemies, the Hyksos, or any other) . . . join themselves to those who hate us and fight against us and depart from the land."<sup>19</sup>

This plan remained in effect for some time. It probably took years to build the cities of Pithom and Raamses (Ramses, Rameses), which the Egyptians used to store goods (cf. 1 Kings 9:19; 2 Chron. 8:6; 17:12). Pithom may be Tell er-Retabeh or Heliopolis, and Raamses may have been Qantir.<sup>20</sup>

"The name 'Rameses' for one of the store cities seems to point unquestionably to Rameses II [ca. 1300-1234 B.C.]. But it is probable that this city, which already existed under the Hyksos (the foreigners who ruled Egypt several centuries before the nineteenth dynasty), was rebuilt by Rameses II and that 1:11 refers to the city by its later name . . . ."<sup>21</sup>

There are several instances of the writer or a later editor using more modern names for older sites in the Pentateuch, such as "Dan" in Gen. 14.

"The brick was the staple of Egyptian architecture, as only the temples and palaces were constructed of stone."<sup>22</sup>

This plan failed to reduce the threat that the Israelites posed to Pharaoh, so the Egyptians adopted a second approach.

1:15-22 Plan B consisted of ordering the Hebrew midwives to kill all the male Hebrew babies at birth. Albright confirmed that these women's names were Semitic.<sup>23</sup>

"They were to kill them, of course, secretly, in such a way that the parents and relatives would be unaware of the crime, and would think that the infant had died of natural causes either before or during birth."<sup>24</sup>

<sup>19</sup>See Gleason L. Archer Jr., "Old Testament History and Recent Archaeology from Abraham to Moses," *Bibliotheca Sacra* 127:505 (January-March 1970):24-25.

<sup>20</sup>See Kaiser, p. 289; and Charles F. Aling, "The Biblical City of Ramses," *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society*, 25:2 (June 1982):128-37.

<sup>21</sup>William H. Gispen, *Exodus*, p. 22. Cf. Wolf, pp. 143-45. See also my note on Gen. 47:11.

<sup>22</sup>F. B. Meyer, *Devotional Commentary on Exodus*, p. 19.

<sup>23</sup>W. F. Albright, "Northwest-Semitic Names in a List of Egyptian Slaves from the Eighteenth Century B.C.," *Journal of the American Oriental Society* 74 (1954):233.

<sup>24</sup>Umberto Cassuto, *A Commentary on the Book of Exodus*, p. 12.

"Infanticide was commonly practiced by the nations of antiquity."<sup>25</sup>

As I mentioned, plan A (vv. 9-14) may have been in effect for several years. Because of the chronology of Moses' life many evangelical commentators felt that the Pharaoh the writer referred to in verses 15-22 was Ahmose's successor, Amenhotep I (1546-1526 B.C.). More likely he was the man who followed him, Thutmose I (1525-ca. 1512 B.C.).

"Although the biblical term 'Hebrew' [v. 15] is probably cognate to the similar word *'apiru* (found in Egyptian, Babylonian, and Canaanite texts), the latter was applied to a population element that was ethnically diverse and that had in common only a generally inferior social status. The word 'Hebrew' is almost always used by Gentiles to distinguish Israelites ethnically from other peoples and apparently denotes descent from Eber (Gen. 10:24-25; 11:14-17), whose ancestor was Noah's son Shem (Gen. 10:21)."<sup>26</sup>

The two midwives mentioned by name (v. 15) were probably the chief midwives who were responsible for others under them.<sup>27</sup>

Ancient Near Easterners preserved national identity through the males, and it is for this reason that Pharaoh ordered their deaths. In contrast, modern Jews trace their ethnic identity through their mother. The change evidently took place during the Middle Ages. One writer suggested that Pharaoh spared the girls, "perhaps to serve later as harem girls."<sup>28</sup>

The midwives' fear of God (vv. 17, 21) led them to disobey Pharaoh's command to practice genocide. They chose to obey God rather than man since Pharaoh's order contradicted a fundamental divine command (cf. Gen. 1:28; 9:1, 7). All life belongs to God, so He is the only person who has the right to take it or to command when others should take it. The midwives' fear of God resulted in their having reverence for human life. Their explanation of their actions (v. 19) may have been truthful or it may not have been entirely truthful.

"Even though these women lied to Pharaoh (which the Bible, as is often the case, does not stop to specifically condemn at this point), they are praised for their outright refusal to take infant lives."<sup>29</sup>

---

<sup>25</sup>Meyer, p. 20.

<sup>26</sup>Youngblood, p. 27.

<sup>27</sup>See Watson E. Mills, "Childbearing in Ancient Times," *Biblical Illustrator* 13:1 (Fall 1986):54-56; and Nahum M. Sarna, "Exploring Exodus—The Oppression," *Biblical Archaeologist* 13:1 (June 1986):77-79.

<sup>28</sup>Gispen, p. 36.

<sup>29</sup>Kaiser, p. 306.

God blessed these women with families of their own (v. 21) in spite of their deceit, if they practiced it, because they feared God.

This second plan "miscarried" too.

The intent of plan C was also to do away with the male Hebrew babies (v. 22). However instead of relying on the Hebrew midwives Pharaoh called on all his subjects to throw every Hebrew boy that was born into the Nile River. Since the Egyptians regarded the Nile as a manifestation of deity, perhaps Pharaoh was making obedience to his edict an act of worship for the Egyptians. This plan evidently failed too. The Egyptians do not appear to have cooperated with Pharaoh. Even Pharaoh's daughter did not obey this command (2:6-8). This plan, too, may very well have continued in effect for many years.

The Pharaoh Moses referred to in verse 22 was probably Thutmose I.<sup>30</sup>

"The central idea [in this pericope] is that God faithfully fulfills His covenant promises in spite of severe and life-threatening opposition. Even Pharaoh, the most powerful man on earth could do nothing to thwart God's purpose. In fact, God actually used Pharaoh's opposition as a means of carrying out His promises."<sup>31</sup>

"It is interesting to note that the author has placed two quite similar narratives on either side of his lengthy treatment of the Exodus and wilderness wanderings. The two narratives are Exodus 1—2, the Egyptian king's attempt to suppress Israel, and Numbers 22—24, the Moabite king's attempt to suppress Israel. Both narratives focus on the futility of the nations' attempts to thwart God's plan to bless the seed of Abraham . . ."<sup>32</sup>

### **3. Moses' birth and education 2:1-10**

"Whilst Pharaoh was urging forward the extermination of the Israelites, God was preparing their emancipator."<sup>33</sup>

". . . among other things, the Pentateuch is an attempt to contrast the lives of two individuals, Abraham and Moses. Abraham, who lived before the law (*ante legem*), is portrayed as one who kept the law [Gen. 26:5], whereas Moses, who lived under the law (*sub lege*), is portrayed as one who died in the wilderness because he did not believe [Num. 20:12]."<sup>34</sup>

---

<sup>30</sup>See Davis, p. 51.

<sup>31</sup>Gordon H. Johnston, "I Will Multiply Your Seed [Exodus 1]," *Exegesis and Exposition* 1:1 (Fall 1986):27.

<sup>32</sup>John H. Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch as Narrative*, p. 242.

<sup>33</sup>Keil and Delitzsch, 1:426.

<sup>34</sup>John H. Sailhamer, "The Mosaic Law and the Theology of the Pentateuch," *Westminster Theological Journal* 53 (Fall 1991):243.

2:1-5 The names of Moses' parents were Amram and Jochebed (6:20).

"At this point Scripture's aim is to inform us that from an ordinary man, . . . and from an ordinary woman, . . . whose names there was no need to mention [at this point], God raised up a redeemer unto his people."<sup>35</sup>

It is not clear from the text if Moses was an unusually beautiful child physically or if he was distinctive in some other respect (v. 2). One commentator translated "beautiful" as "healthy."<sup>36</sup> The phrase used to describe him in Hebrews 11:23, as well as the Hebrew word used here, can have a broader meaning than physical beauty. Josephus claimed that God had revealed to Amram in a dream that Moses would humble the Egyptians.<sup>37</sup> There is no scriptural support for this tradition; it may or may not be true.

Jochebed and Amram hid Moses because they trusted God (v. 3; Heb. 11:23-26). The same Hebrew word translated "wicker basket" in this verse (*tehvah*) reads "ark" or "boat" in English translations of Genesis 6:14. As Noah's ark was God's instrument for preserving one savior of the human race, Moses' ark proved to be His means of preserving another savior of the Israelites. Moses' parents obeyed Pharaoh and put Moses in the river (1:22), but they also trusted God who delivered their baby.

"Ironically Jochebed, putting her son into the Nile, was in one sense obeying the Pharaoh's edict to 'throw' baby boys into the river! (Ex. 1:22)"<sup>38</sup>

"There is abundant warrant, afforded by this narrative, for Christian parents to cast their children upon God."<sup>39</sup>

Moses' older sister was probably Miriam. She is the only sister of Moses mentioned in Scripture (v. 4; Num. 26:59).

The daughter of Pharaoh (Thutmose I) was probably Hatshepsut who was a very significant person in Egyptian history (v. 5). She later assumed co-regency with Thutmose III and ruled as the fifth Pharaoh of the eighteenth dynasty (1503-1482 B.C.). The ruling class in Egypt was male dominated, and it took a very forceful woman to rise and rule. Queen Hatshepsut adopted certain male mannerisms to minimize objections to her rule including the wearing of a false beard that appears on some Egyptian pictures of her.<sup>40</sup>

---

<sup>35</sup>Cassuto, p. 17.

<sup>36</sup>Brevard Childs, *The Book of Exodus*, p. 18.

<sup>37</sup>Flavius Josephus, *Antiquities of the Jews*, 2:9:3.

<sup>38</sup>Hannah, p. 109.

<sup>39</sup>Meyer, p. 26.

<sup>40</sup>See Merrill Unger, *Archaeology and the Old Testament*, pp. 144-45; Joseph Free, *Archaeology and Bible History*, p. 86, n. 9; and Francis Nichol, ed., *The Seventh-Day Adventist Bible Commentary*, 1:502.

It was not uncommon for Pharaohs and other Egyptians to bathe ceremonially in the sacred Nile River, as many Indians do today in the Ganges River. The Egyptians believed that the waters of the Nile possessed the ability to impart fruitfulness and to prolong life.

Several women were involved in the events surrounding Moses' birth: the midwives, Pharaoh's daughter, her maid, Moses' sister, and Jochebed. How ironic it was that women, whom Egyptian and Israelite men looked down on as less significant than themselves, should have been responsible for saving Israel's savior! Truly the hand of God is evident. The Gospel writers also recorded that several women ministered to Jesus Christ, the Savior of the world, during His first advent.

2:6-10 As the adopted son of Pharaoh's daughter, Moses enjoyed the highest privileges in his education. In commenting on Moses' training Stephen said that he became, "a man of power in words and deeds" (Acts 7:21-22). Josephus wrote that Moses was a general in the Egyptian army that defeated the Ethiopians and that he married the daughter of the king of Ethiopia.<sup>41</sup> We cannot prove the accuracy of this statement, but it suggests that Moses may have risen high in Egyptian society before he fled Egypt.

Moses' name was probably Egyptian, but it became a popular Hebrew name. It relates obviously to the names of other great Egyptians of that period (e.g., Ahmose, Thutmose, et al.). The "mose" part of the name means "one born of," and "mo" means "water."

"The phrase 'drew him out' (v. 10) is a Hebrew pun on the name, emphasizing the baby's rescue from the waters of the Nile."<sup>42</sup>

This name became even more appropriate as Moses' great life work of drawing the Israelites out of Egypt took shape. Ancient Near Easterners regarded the waters of the sea as a very hostile enemy because they could not control them. The Egypt of Moses' day was such a hostile foe for the Israelites. In this sense Moses' name proved prophetic. Moses' name may have been longer and may have had some connection with the name of an Egyptian god, as the other "mose" compound names referred to above did. If this was the case, "in refusing to 'be called the son of Pharaoh's daughter' Moses was actually refusing reference to an Egyptian deity."<sup>43</sup>

The fact that Moses later chose to identify with the Israelites rather than the Egyptians is remarkable in view of his Egyptian privileges and background. His parents must have had a strong influence on him beginning very early in his life (cf. Joseph). We should never underestimate the power of parental influence even early in life. Note too that the faith of a child can grow stronger when tested by an ungodly environment.

---

<sup>41</sup>Josephus, 2:10:1.

<sup>42</sup>Youngblood, p. 30.

<sup>43</sup>Nichol, 1:504.

#### **4. Moses' flight from Egypt to Midian 2:11-15**

Moses was "approaching the age of 40" (Acts 7:23) when he took his stand for his Hebrew brethren (v. 11). The reference to the Hebrew man as "one of his brethren" suggests that Moses' motivation in acting as he did was love that sprang from faith in God's promises to the patriarchs. The writer of the Epistle to the Hebrews stated this motivation explicitly in Hebrews 11:24-26.

Moses' desire to help his brethren was admirable, but his methods were deplorable (v. 12; cf. Acts 7:23-29). He trusted in his own ability to liberate the Israelites and sought to bring this about by natural means. He even resorted to sinful means and seized authority rather than waiting for God to bestow it on him.

". . . there is in the [Hebrew] text no suggestion that Moses meant to kill the Egyptian, any more than that the Egyptian or the Hebrew man was attempting to kill his adversary."<sup>44</sup>

"You can never redress a nation's wrongs by offering brute force to brute force, or by a number of rash, violent acts."<sup>45</sup>

God had to teach Moses that he must not trust in his own ability but rely on God's strategy and strength and obey His commands. God drove Moses out of Egypt to the desert of Midian where He proceeded to teach His servant these lessons. He made him "a prince" and "a judge" (v. 14) eventually. Here Moses rescued an Israelite from an Egyptian who was beating him, but later he rescued all the Israelites from the Egyptians who were oppressing them (3:10).

The Pharaoh referred to here was probably Thutmose III (v. 15; 1504-1450 B.C.) whose reign included a period of 21 years as co-regent with Hatshepsut. Pharaoh probably tried to kill Moses by having him brought to justice through normal legal channels.

The land of Midian lay to the east of the Sinai Peninsula and probably flanked the Gulf of Aqabah on both sides.<sup>46</sup> Moses ran a long way. The Midianites were descendants of Abraham through Keturah (Gen. 25:1-2).

"Midianites were employed in the copper mines of the Sinai Peninsula by Egyptian kings since the very first dynasties."<sup>47</sup>

Moses' faith is obvious in his desire to identify with God and His people. He probably struggled in his younger years with whether he could do more for the Israelites by working for them within the Egyptian hierarchy or without. He chose to identify with the faithful and relied on the power of God to a limited extent rather than on the power of

---

<sup>44</sup>Durham, p. 19.

<sup>45</sup>Meyer, p. 32.

<sup>46</sup>On the difficulty of locating Midian exactly, see Durham, p. 20.

<sup>47</sup>Schwantes, p. 158.

Pharaoh to accomplish his goals. It was Moses' faith in God that led him to give up Egypt (Heb. 11:24-26).

God commands all who trust Him to separate from the world system that opposes and excludes Him (Rom. 12:2; et al.). This may or may not involve physical separation, depending on God's will. For Moses it involved physical separation, but for Joseph and Daniel it did not. The will of God is not the same for everyone in this respect.

### **5. Moses' life in Midian 2:16-25**

This section introduces some of the secondary characters in Exodus and sets the stage for Moses' call. Its purpose is primarily transitional.

Moses provided water for Jethro's daughters and their sheep in the wilderness (vv. 16-17). Later he provided water for God's people and their flocks in the wilderness (cf. 17:6; Num. 20:7-11). This was the third time Moses sought to deliver others from harm (v. 17; cf. vv. 12-13).

As "the priest of Midian" (v. 16) Reuel ("friend of God," v. 18) was the spiritual head of his branch of the Midianites. Moses' father-in-law had at least two names: Reuel (or Raguel, 2:18; Num. 10:29) and Jethro (or Jether, 3:1; 4:18; 18:1, 2, 5, 6, 9, 10, 12). He appears to have been a worshipper of the true God (cf. 18:12-23). At this time he may simply have been a God-fearing Semite.

Moses' years in Midian were years of bitter humiliation. He gave expression to his feelings by naming his first son Gershom (v. 22), meaning "banishment."

"The pride and self-will with which he had offered himself in Egypt as the deliverer and judge of his oppressed brethren, had been broken down by the feeling of exile."<sup>48</sup>

Moses lived in Midian "many days" (v. 23) before Pharaoh (Thutmose III) died. Stephen said it was a period of 40 years (Acts 7:30).

". . . Moses is at home in the author's view because he has come at last to a people who worship the God of his fathers. The Moses-Midian connection is theological. Suggested deftly in this climactic section of the narrative of chap. 2, that connection will be affirmed in chaps. 3—4 and 18."<sup>49</sup>

The prayers of the Israelites in their bondage touched God's heart, and He began anew to act for them (cf. 3:7-9). This is another of the many references in Scripture that indicate that prayer affects some of God's actions. Remembering His covenant with the patriarchs, God acted for the Israelites by commissioning Moses.

---

<sup>48</sup>Keil and Delitzsch, 1:435.

<sup>49</sup>Durham, p. 22.

God graciously and sovereignly used Moses' sin (evidently manslaughter, v. 12) to bring ultimate blessing for His chosen people (cf. Rom. 5:20). This is important to observe as we seek to understand God's ways.

### **6. Moses' call 3:1—4:18**

3:1-12 Horeb is another name for Sinai (v. 1). It probably indicates a range of mountains rather than a particular mountain peak. The writer called it "the mountain of God" because it was the place where God later gave the Mosaic Law to Israel. The traditional site of Mt. Sinai and the Horeb range is in the southern Sinai Peninsula. However some Scripture references cast this location into question (cf. Deut. 33:2; Gal. 4:25). These references suggest that the site may have been somewhere on the east side of the Gulf of Aqabah.<sup>50</sup>

Here the Angel of the Lord is clearly God (Yahweh, v. 2; cf. vv. 4, 6, 7). He was not an angelic messenger but God Himself.

A burning thorn-bush was and is not uncommon in the Sinai desert.<sup>51</sup> These bushes sometimes burst into flame spontaneously. This bush was unusual, however, because even though it burned it did not burn up (v. 3). The monastery of St. Catherine is supposed to be on the exact site of the burning bush, according to ancient tradition.<sup>52</sup>

Jewish and Christian interpreters have long seen the bush in this incident as a symbol of the nation of Israel ignoble in relation to other nations (cf. Judg. 9:15). The fire probably symbolized the affliction of Egyptian bondage (cf. Deut. 4:20). The Israelites suffered as a result of this hostility, but God did not allow them to suffer extinction as a people from it. Because Israel has frequently been in the furnace of affliction throughout history, though not consumed, Jews have identified the burning bush as a symbol of their race. This symbol often appears on the walls of synagogues or in other prominent places not only in modern Israel but also in settlements of Jews around the world. The fire also probably symbolized the presence of God dwelling among His people (cf. Gen. 15:17; Exod. 19:18; 40:38). God was with His people in their affliction (cf. Deut. 31:6; Josh. 1:5; Dan. 3:25; Heb. 13:5).

This was the first time God had revealed Himself to Moses, or anyone else as far as Scripture records, for over 430 years (v. 4). Later in history God broke another 400-year long period of prophetic silence when John the Baptist and Jesus appeared to lead an even more significant exodus.

---

<sup>50</sup>However, see Gordon Franz, "Mt. Sinai Is *Not* Jebel El-Lawz in Saudi Arabia," a paper presented at the Annual Meeting of the Evangelical Theological Society, 15 November 2001, Colorado Springs, Colo.

<sup>51</sup>Cassuto, p. 31.

<sup>52</sup>See Philip C. Johnson, "Exodus," in *The Wycliffe Bible Commentary*, p. 54.

The custom of removing one's shoes out of respect is very old (v. 5). It was common at this time in the ancient world and is still common today.<sup>53</sup> For example, when one enters a Moslem mosque he must remove his shoes.

"God begins his discourse with Moses by warning him not to come near to him because he is holy (v. 5). As we will later see, the idea of God's holiness is a central theme in the remainder of the book. Indeed, the whole structure of Israel's worship of God at the tabernacle is based on a view of God as the absolutely Holy One who has come to dwell in their midst. We should not lose sight of the fact, however, that at the same time that God warns Moses to stand at a distance, he also speaks to him 'face to face' (cf. Nu 12:8). The fact that God is a holy God should not be understood to mean that he is an impersonal force—God is holy yet intensely personal. This is a central theme in the narratives of the Sinai covenant that follow."<sup>54</sup>

God proceeded to explain the reason for His revelation (vv. 7-10). The suffering of His people had touched His heart. He had heard their cries and seen their affliction. Now He purposed to deliver them. The compassion of God stands out in these verses.

"The anthropomorphisms (i.e., the descriptions of God's actions and attributes in words usually associated with mankind) in vv. 7-8 of God's 'seeing,' 'hearing,' 'knowing' (= 'be concerned about'), and 'coming down' became graphic ways to describe divine realities for which no description existed except for partially analogous situations in the human realm. But these do not imply that God has corporeal and spatial limitations; rather, he is a living person who can and does follow the stream of human events and who can and does at times directly intervene in human affairs."<sup>55</sup>

"Is there no discrepancy between these two announcements ["I have come down to deliver," v. 8, and "I will send you," v. 10]? If God has Himself come down to do the work of redemption, what need of Moses? Would not a word from those almighty lips be enough? Why summon a shepherd, a lonely and unbefriended man, a man who has already failed once, and from whom the passing years have stolen his

---

<sup>53</sup>Keil and Delitzsch, 1:437-40.

<sup>54</sup>Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch* . . . , p. 245.

<sup>55</sup>Kaiser, p. 316.

manhood's prime, to work out with painful elaboration, and through a series of bewildering disappointments, the purposed emancipation? But this is not an isolated case. Throughout the entire scheme of Divine government, we meet with the principle of mediation. God ever speaks to men, and works for them, through the instrumentality of men. Chosen agents are called into the inner circle, to catch the Divine thought and mirror the Divine character, and then sent back to their fellows, to cause them to partake."<sup>56</sup>

The description of Canaan as a land "flowing with milk and honey" (vv. 8, 17) is a common biblical one. It pictures an abundance of grass, fruit trees, and flowers where cows, goats, and bees thrive and where the best drink and food abound. The operative word in the description is "flowing." This is a picture of a land in contrast to Egypt, where sedentary farming was common. In Canaan the Israelites would experience a different form of life, namely, a pastoral lifestyle. Canaan depended on rainfall whereas Egypt did not; it depended on the Nile River.<sup>57</sup>

"This formula was at first coined by the nomadic shepherds to denote a land blessed with pastures for cattle producing milk and with trees whose boughs afforded man, without the necessity for hard toil, food as nourishing and as sweet as bees' honey. In the course of time the signification of the phrase was extended to include also land that yielded rich harvests as a result of human labour."<sup>58</sup>

Often Moses listed seven tribes as possessing Canaan (e.g., Deut. 7:1), but he also named six (v. 8), 10 (Gen. 15:19-21), and 12 (Gen. 10:15-18) as the inhabitants in various Scripture passages.

The Pharaoh to whom Moses referred here (v. 10) was very likely Amenhotep II who succeeded Thutmose III and ruled from 1450 to 1425 B.C. He ruled during the very zenith of Egypt's power, prestige, and glory as a world government.

Moses had become genuinely humble during his years as a mere shepherd in Midian (v. 11). Earlier an Israelite had asked Moses, "Who made you a prince or a judge over us?" (2:14). Now Moses asked the same thing of God: "Who am I that I should . . . bring the sons of Israel out of Egypt?"

"Some time before he had offered himself of his own accord as a deliverer and judge; but now he had learned

---

<sup>56</sup>Meyer, p. 43.

<sup>57</sup>Barry J. Beitzel, *The Moody Atlas of Bible Lands*, p. 49.

<sup>58</sup>Cassuto, p. 34.

humility in the school of Midian, and was filled in consequence with distrust of his own power and fitness. The son of Pharaoh's daughter had become a shepherd, and felt himself too weak to go to Pharaoh."<sup>59</sup>

"In these verses [11-12], the presentation of the tetragrammaton is only introduced. Moses objected, . . . 'Who am I, . . . that I . . . that I . . . ?' and God answers, . . . 'the point is I AM with you.' Who Moses is is not the question; it is rather, who is *with* Moses?"<sup>60</sup>

"As long as a man holds that he is easily able to do some great deed of heroism and faith, he is probably incompetent for it, but when he protests his inability, and puts away the earliest proposals, though made by the Almighty Himself, he gives the first unmistakable sign that he has been rightly designated."<sup>61</sup>

God gave Moses a sign to inspire his courage and confidence that God would make his mission a success (v. 12; cf. Gen. 37:5-11). This sign was evidently the burning bush. God also gave Moses a promise that he would return with the Israelites to the very mountain where he stood then. This promise required faith on Moses' part, but it was also an encouragement to him. As surely as God had revealed Himself to Moses there once, He promised to bring Moses back to Horeb to worship Him a second time with the Israelites. The punctuation in the NASB may be misleading.

". . . the experience of Moses in 3:1-12 is an exact foreshadowing of the experience of Israel, first in Egypt, then in the deprivation of the wilderness, and finally at Sinai."<sup>62</sup>

3:13-22 Moses' fear that the Israelite elders would not accept him is understandable (v. 13). God had not revealed Himself to His people for over 400 years. When Moses asked how he should answer the Israelites' question, "What is His name?" he was asking how he could demonstrate to them that their God had sent him.

"According to the conception prevailing in the ancient East, the designation of an entity was to be equated, as it were,

---

<sup>59</sup>Keil and Delitzsch, 1:440-41. See Frederick Holmgren, "Before the temple, the thornbush: an exposition of Exodus 2:11—3:12," *The Reformed Journal* 33:3 (March 1983):9-11; and Robert J. Voss, "Who Am I That I Should Go? Exodus 3:11 (Exod. 2:25—4:18)," *Wisconsin Lutheran Quarterly* 80:4 (Fall 1983):243-47.

<sup>60</sup>Durham, p. 33.

<sup>61</sup>Meyer, p. 45.

<sup>62</sup>Durham, p. 30.

with its existence: whatever is without an appellation does not exist, but whatever has a denomination has existence."<sup>63</sup>

"The question contains both a request for information and an explanation of its significance. There are two aspects of the one question. Clearly the people want to know more about God's intention. By requesting his name, they seek to learn his new relationship to them. Formerly he related to them as the God of the Fathers. What will he be to Israel now?"<sup>64</sup>

"What Moses asks, then, has to do with whether God can accomplish what he is promising. What is there in his reputation (see Num 6:27; Deut 12:5, 11; 16:2-6; Pss 8:1, 74:7; Amos 5:8, 9:5-6; Jer 33:2) that lends credibility to the claim in his call? How, suddenly, can he be expected to deal with a host of powerful Egyptian deities against whom, across so many years, he has apparently won no victory for his people?"<sup>65</sup>

God's name expressed His nature and actions (vv. 14-15). The Israelites would ask for proof that the God of their fathers was with Moses. God explained the name by which He made Himself known to Abraham (Gen. 15:7).

"The repetition of the same word [I am] suggests the idea of uninterrupted continuance and boundless duration."<sup>66</sup>

Yet it means more than this.

"To the Hebrew 'to be' does not just mean to exist as all other beings and things do as well—but to be active, to express oneself in active being, 'The God who acts.' 'I am what in creative activity and everywhere I turn out to be,' or 'I am (the God) that really acts.'"<sup>67</sup>

"I am that I am" means "God will reveal Himself in His actions through history."<sup>68</sup>

---

<sup>63</sup>Cassuto, pp. 36-37.

<sup>64</sup>Childs, p. 75.

<sup>65</sup>Durham, p. 38.

<sup>66</sup>Keil and Delitzsch, 1:442-43.

<sup>67</sup>Sigmund Mowinckel, "The Name of the God of Moses," *Hebrew Union College Annual* 32 (1961):127.

<sup>68</sup>Charles Gianotti, "The Meaning of the Divine Name YHWH," *Bibliotheca Sacra* 142:565 (January-March 1985):45.

Other translations are, "I will be what I will be," "I am the existing One," and "I cause to be what comes to pass."<sup>69</sup> One writer paraphrased God's answer, "It is I who am with you."<sup>70</sup> In other words, the one who had promised to be with the descendants of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob had sent Moses to them.

"The answer Moses receives is not, by any stretch of the imagination, a name. It is an assertion of authority, a confession of an essential reality, and thus an entirely appropriate response to the question Moses poses."<sup>71</sup>

Moses had asked, "Who am I?" implying his complete inadequacy for his calling. God replied, "I am who I am!" implying His complete adequacy. The issue was not who Moses was but who God is. I believe God meant, I am the God of your forefathers who proved myself long ago as completely adequate for all their needs, so it really doesn't matter who you are, Moses. Moses would learn the complete adequacy of God himself in the events that followed. Later, Pharaoh would say, "Who is the LORD?" (5:2), and God's response was, "I am the LORD!" (6:2, 6, 8). Pharaoh, too, then learned God's complete adequacy. The real issue, then, was, and is, who God is.

This is the first reference to the elders of Israel (v. 16).<sup>72</sup> The elders were the leaders of the various groups of Israelites.

God told Moses to request Pharaoh's permission for the Israelites to leave Egypt (v. 18).

"The sequel shows that there was no element of deceit in the request for 'a three days' journey into the wilderness,' i.e., right out of contact with the Egyptian frontier guards. Pharaoh knew perfectly well that this implied no return; indeed, since Israel was a tolerated alien people, he would have no claim on their return, once they had left his territory."<sup>73</sup>

"Moses' demand for complete freedom, though couched in polite words, is there from the start."<sup>74</sup>

---

<sup>69</sup>Johnson, pp. 54-55.

<sup>70</sup>Cassuto, p. 38.

<sup>71</sup>Durham, p. 38.

<sup>72</sup>See Leslie Hoppe, "Elders and Deuteronomy," *Eglise et Theologie* 14 (1983):259-72.

<sup>73</sup>H. L. Ellison, *Exodus*, p. 22.

<sup>74</sup>R. Alan Cole, *Exodus: An Introduction and Commentary*, p. 72.

The signs God proceeded to give Moses would demonstrate to the Israelites that their God was again actively working for them (v. 20; cf. 4:2-9). God told Moses that the Israelites would believe him (v. 18).

Probably there were several reasons the Israelites were to ask their Egyptian neighbors for jewelry and clothing (v. 22). By doing so, they would humiliate the Egyptians further. They would also obtain articles needed for the wilderness march and the construction of the tabernacle. Moreover they would receive partial payment for the labor the Egyptians had stolen from them during their years of slavery (cf. Deut. 15:12-15).

The writer *stated* God's sovereignty over Pharaoh in verses 14-22. God *demonstrated* it in the plagues that followed (chs. 5—11).<sup>75</sup>

"With the name 'Yahweh' revealed and explained and with the proof of this explanation illustrated, at least in prospect, Moses can have no further question about *God's* authority. The narrative deals next with Moses' own authority, and how that is to be made clear."<sup>76</sup>

4:1-9

God gave Moses three miracles to convince the Israelites that the God of their fathers had appeared to him. They also served to bolster Moses' faith. Moses had left Egypt and the Israelites with a clouded reputation under the sentence of death, and he had been away for a long time. He needed to prove to his brethren that they could trust and believe him. Not only were these miracles strong proofs of God's power, but they appear to have had special significance for the Israelites as well (cf. v. 8).<sup>77</sup>

God probably intended the first miracle, of the staff and serpent (vv. 2-5), to assure Moses and the Israelites that He was placing the satanic power of Egypt under his authoritative control. This was the power before which Moses had previously fled. Moses' shepherd staff became a symbol of authority in his hand, a virtual scepter. The serpent represented the deadly power of Egypt that sought to kill the Israelites, and Moses in particular. The Pharaohs wore a metal cobra around their heads. It was a common symbol of the nation of Egypt. However the serpent also stood for the great enemy of man behind that power, Satan, who had been the foe of the seed of the woman since the Fall (Gen. 3:15). Moses' ability to turn the serpent into his rod by seizing its tail would have encouraged the Israelites. They should have believed that God had enabled him to overcome the cunning and might of Egypt and to exercise authority over its fearful power. This was a sign that God would bless Moses' leadership.

---

<sup>75</sup>See *ibid.*, pp. 19-40, for an exposition of the character of God as revealed in Exodus.

<sup>76</sup>Durham, p. 41.

<sup>77</sup>See Johnson, p. 55; et al.

The second miracle, of the leprous hand (vv. 6-7), evidently assured Moses that God would bring him and the Israelites out of their defiling environment and heal them. But first He would punish the Egyptians with crippling afflictions. Presently the Israelites were unclean because of their confinement in wicked Egypt. Moses' hand was the instrument of his strength. As such it was a good symbol of Moses, himself the instrument of God's strength in delivering the Israelites, and Israel, God's instrument for blessing the world.<sup>78</sup> Moses' hand would also have suggested to Pharaoh that Yahweh could afflict or deliver through His representative at will. The wholeness of Moses' hand may have attested to God's delegation of divine power to him.

The third miracle, of the water turned into blood (v. 9), provided assurance that God would humiliate the Egyptians by spoiling what they regarded as a divine source of life. The Egyptians identified the Nile with the Egyptian god Osiris and credited it with all good and prosperity in their national life. Blood was and is a symbol of life poured out in death (cf. Lev. 17:11). Moses possessed the power to change the life-giving water of the Nile into blood. The Israelites would have concluded that he also had power to destroy the gods of Egypt and punish the land with death (cf. 7:14-24).

"Like Abel's blood that cried out from the ground, so would the infants' whose lives had been demanded by Pharaoh (1:22)."<sup>79</sup>

Each of these signs attested Yahweh's creative power. Normally at least two witnesses were necessary to establish credibility under the Mosaic Law (Deut. 19:15; et al.). A third witness further strengthened the veracity of the testimony. Here God gave Moses three witnesses to confirm His prophet's divine calling and enablement. God entrusted Moses with His powerful word and endowed him with His mighty power. He was the first prophet with the power to perform miracles.

4:10-17      Rather than inspiring confidence in Moses, God's commission frightened him (vv. 10-12). Moses' claim to be slow of speech (not handicapped, but lacking in eloquence) was a thinly veiled excuse by which Moses hoped to escape his calling. Stephen said Moses was eloquent (Acts 7:22). Apparently Moses felt he did not have sufficient oratorical ability to persuade the Israelite elders or Pharaoh. God assured Moses that He would enable Him to communicate effectively. Again God reminded Moses that He was the creator.

---

<sup>78</sup>For an explanation of the Septuagint's omission of "leprous" from verse 6, see C. Houtman, "A Note on the LXX Version of Exodus 4, 6," *Zeitschrift für die Alttestamentliche Wissenschaft* 97:2 (1983):253-54.

<sup>79</sup>Kaiser, p. 326.

"This claim of inadequacy is a recurring one in OT passages having to do with God's call and commission (cf., e.g., Judg 6:14-15; 1 Sam 10:20-24; 1 Kgs 3:5-9; Isa 6:5-8; Jer 1:4-10; see also Habel . . .<sup>80</sup> Whatever its connection to prophetic and royal traditions of the word and the messenger, its more important rootage is in the OT pattern of the weak become strong, the least become great, the mean become mighty, the last become first (cf., e.g., Judg 6:11-24; 1 Sam 16:1-13; 17:19-54; Amos 7:14-15; Isa 6:1-13; Jer 1:4-19; and even Isa 52:13-53:12). This pattern is a metaphor of theological assertion in the Bible, and everywhere it occurs, its fundamental message is the same: God's word, God's rule, God's teaching, God's deliverance come not from man, no matter who that man may be, but from God. Even the election of Israel makes this point. Indeed that election is probably the most convincing of all the occurrences of the pattern."<sup>81</sup>

"Cherish the lowliest thought you choose of yourself, but unite it with the loftiest conception of God's All-Sufficiency. Self-depreciation may lead to the marring of a useful life. We must think soberly of ourselves, not too lowly, as not too extravagantly. The one talent must not be buried in the earth."<sup>82</sup>

Unable to excuse himself, Moses finally admitted that he did not want to obey God (vv. 13-16). God became angry with Moses because he refused to obey. However, the sovereign Lord would not let His reluctant servant go (cf. Jonah). Instead He provided a mouthpiece for Moses in his older brother by three years, Aaron (cf. 7:7). This act was both an aid to Moses and a discipline for his disobedience. On the one hand Aaron was an encouragement to Moses, but on the other he proved to be a source of frustration as a mediator (e.g., ch. 32).

"The mouth of Moses may well be heavy and clumsy, slow and halting in speech. It would not matter if it were dumb altogether, and Aaron's mouth, as well. Yahweh will be there, and Yahweh will take responsibility for both the message and the messengers. The staff in the hands of Moses and Aaron is a symbol of this powerful Presence."<sup>83</sup>

---

<sup>80</sup>N. Habel, "The Form and Significance of the Call Narratives," *Zeitschrift für die Alttestamentliche Wissenschaft* 77 (1965):316-23.

<sup>81</sup>Durham, p. 49.

<sup>82</sup>Meyer, p. 71.

<sup>83</sup>Durham, p. 51.

As time passed, Moses grew more confident and communicative and increasingly took his proper place as Israel's leader.

- 4:18 Moses' pessimism concerning the welfare of the Israelites comes out in his request that Jethro (Reuel of 2:18; cf. 3:1) let him return to Egypt. Moses apparently concluded, even after his experience at the burning bush, that there was no hope for the Israelites.

This section makes it possible for us to gain great insight into Moses' feelings about God's promises to his forefathers and about his own life. Moses had become thoroughly disillusioned. He regarded himself as a failure, the objects of his ministry as hopeless, and God as unfaithful, uncaring, and unable to deliver His people. He had learned his own inability to deliver Israel, but he did not yet believe in God's ability to do so. Even the miraculous revelation of God at the burning bush and the miracles that God enabled Moses to perform did not convince him of God's purpose and power.

One supernatural revelation, even one involving miracles, does not usually change convictions that a person has built up over years of experience. We not only need to believe in our own inability to produce supernatural change, as Moses did, but we also need to believe in God's ability to produce it. Moses had not yet learned the second lesson, which God proceeded to teach him.

### **7. Moses' return to Egypt 4:19-31**

- 4:19-23 Moses did not return immediately to Egypt when he arrived back in Midian following his encounter with God at Horeb (v. 19). God spoke to him again in Midian and sent him back to Egypt assuring His servant that everyone who had sought his life earlier had died. Compare Abram's stalling in Haran until God again urged him to press on to the unknown Promised Land.

Verse 20 describes what Moses did after God's full revelation to him in Midian that continues in verses 21-23. In chronological order verse 20 follows verse 23.

God gave Moses a preview of all that would take place in his dealings with Pharaoh (vv. 21-23). When God said He would harden Pharaoh's heart (v. 21), He was not saying that Pharaoh would be unable to choose whether he would release the Israelites. God made Pharaoh's heart progressively harder as the king chose to disobey God's will (cf. Lev. 26:23-24).

"The *hardening of Pharaoh* is ascribed to God, not only in the passages just quoted [14:4, 17; 7:3; and 10:1], but also in 9:12; 10:20, 27; 11:10; 14:8; that is to say, ten times in all; and that not merely as foreknown by Jehovah, but as caused and effected by Him. In the last five passages it is invariably stated that 'Jehovah hardened . . . Pharaoh's

heart.' But it is also stated just as often, viz. ten times, that Pharaoh hardened his own heart, or made it heavy or firm; e.g., in 7:13, 22; 8:15; 9:35; . . . 7:14; . . . 9:7; . . . 8:11, 28; 9:34; . . . 13:15. . . .

"According to this, the hardening of Pharaoh was quite as much his own act as the decree of God. But if, in order to determine the precise relation of the divine to the human causality, we look more carefully at the two classes of expressions, we shall find that not only in connection with the first sign, by which Moses and Aaron were to show their credentials as the messengers of Jehovah, sent with the demand that he would let the people of Israel go (7:13-14), but after the first five penal miracles, the hardening is invariably represented as his own. . . . It is not till after the sixth plague that it is stated that Jehovah made the heart of Pharaoh firm (9:12). . . . Looked at from this side, the hardening was a fruit of sin, a consequence of self-will, high-mindedness, and pride which flowed from sin, and a continuous and ever increasing abuse of that freedom of the will which is innate in man, and which involves the possibility of obstinate resistance to the word and chastisement of God even until death. . . .

". . . God not only permits a man to harden himself; He also produced obduracy, and suspends this sentence over the impenitent. Not as though God took pleasure in the death of the wicked! No; God desires that the wicked should repent of his evil way and live (Ezek. 33:11); and He desires this most earnestly, for 'He will have all men to be saved and to come unto the knowledge of the truth' (1 Tim. 2:4; cf. 2 Pet. 3:9). As God causes His earthly sun to rise upon the evil and the good, and sendeth rain on the just and the unjust (Matt. 5:45), so He causes His sun of grace to shine upon all sinners, to lead them to life and salvation.

"The sun, by the force of its heat, moistens the wax and dries the clay, softening the one and hardening the other; and as this produces opposite effects by the same power, so, through the long-suffering of God, which reaches to all, some receive good and others evil, some are softened and others hardened' (Theodoret).

"It is the curse of sin, that it renders the hard heart harder, and less susceptible to the gracious manifestations of divine love, long-suffering, and patience. In this twofold manner God produces hardness, not only *permissive* but *effective*;

i.e., not only by giving time and space for the manifestation of human opposition, even to the utmost limits of creaturely freedom, but still more by those continued manifestations of His will which drive the hard heart to such utter obduracy that it is no longer capable of returning, and so giving over the hardened sinner to the judgment of damnation. This is what we find in the case of Pharaoh."<sup>84</sup>

See Romans 1:24-32 for the New Testament expression of this truth. Even though God's hardening of Pharaoh's heart was only the complement of Pharaoh's hardening his own heart, God revealed only the former action in verse 21. God's purpose in this revelation was to prepare Moses for the opposition he would face. He also intended to strengthen his faith by obviating any questions that might arise in Moses' mind concerning God's omniscience as his conflict with Pharaoh intensified.<sup>85</sup>

"Egyptians believed that when a person died his heart was weighed in the hall of judgment. If one's heart was 'heavy' with sin, that person was judged. A stone beetle scarab was placed on the heart of the deceased person to suppress his natural tendency to confess sin which would subject himself to judgment. This 'hardening of the heart' by the scarab would result in salvation for the deceased.

"However, God reversed this process in Pharaoh's case. Instead of his heart being suppressed so that he was silent about his sin and thus delivered, his heart became hardened, he confessed his sin (Ex. 9:27, 34; 10:16-17), and his sinfully heavy heart resulted in judgment. For the Egyptians 'hardening of the heart' resulted in silence (absence of confession of sin) and therefore salvation. But God's hardening of Pharaoh's heart resulted in acknowledgment of sin and in judgment."<sup>86</sup>

The real question that God's dealings with Pharaoh raises is, Does man have a free will? Man has limited freedom, not absolute freedom. We have many examples of this fact in analogous relationships. A child has limited freedom under his or her parent. An adult has limited freedom under his or

---

<sup>84</sup>Keil and Delitzsch, 1:453-456. Johnson, p. 56; Walter C. Kaiser, *Toward Old Testament Ethics*, p. 255; Nahum M. Sarna, *Exodus*, p. 23; Robert B. Chisholm, "Divine Hardening in the Old Testament," *Bibliotheca Sacra* 153:612 (October-December 1996):411, 429; and Dorian G. Coover Cox, "The Hardening of Pharaoh's Heart in Its Literary and Cultural Contexts," *Bibliotheca Sacra* 163:651 (July-September 2006):292-311, took essentially the same position.

<sup>85</sup>F. E. Deist, "Who is to blame: the Pharaoh, Yahweh or circumstance? On human responsibility, and divine ordinance in Exodus 1—14," *OTWSA* 29(1986):91-110, argued that documents J, D, and P each give a different answer to the question of the relationship between divine sovereignty and human responsibility.

<sup>86</sup>Hannah, pp. 114-15.

her human government. Likewise individuals have limited freedom under divine government. God is sovereign, but we are responsible for the decisions God allows us to make (cf. John 1:12; 3:16, 36; 5:24; 6:47; 20:31; Rom. 9:14-21; Jer. 18:1-6).<sup>87</sup>

"Childs suggests that the matter of causality in the heart-hardening is a side-track; that those critics, for example, who have seen here a theological dimension of predestination and freewill, have been wrong. I would say, No, they have been right (at least in principle) to sense such a dimension, but wrong to see the question of divine determination in human affairs arising *only* in connection with Pharaoh's heart-hardening. For the *whole* story may be seen in these terms—Moses and the people, as well as Pharaoh, exist and act within a framework of divine 'causality.' With them, too, the question arises, Are they independent agents? Are they manipulated by God? (Have they freewill? Are they 'pre-destined?') The story is about freedom; but freedom turns out to involve varieties of servitude.

"Thus Isbell's observation bears repeating: the story is above all one about masters, especially God. No one in the story entirely escapes God's control or its repercussions, whether directly or indirectly. Moses who sits removed in Midian finds himself forced by Yahweh into a direct servitude but is nevertheless allowed to develop a measure of freedom. Pharaoh (Egypt) exalts his own mastery and is cast into a total and mortal servitude. The people of Egypt and Israel are buffeted this way and that in varying indirect roles of servitude. . . .

"God himself is depicted as risking insecurity, because that is the price of allowing his servants a dimension of freedom. An exodus story that saw no murmuring, no rebellion (or potential for rebellion) by Moses and by Israel, would indeed be a fairy tale, a piece of soft romance. But to talk of God and 'insecurity' in the same breath is also to see that the gift of human 'freedom' (to some if not to others) itself creates external pressures on God which in turn circumscribe his own action. Egypt/Pharaoh must be made an example of, spectacularly, so that Israel, the whole world, may *freely* come to recognize that Yahweh is indeed master, one who remembers his obligations as well as one who demands 'service' (labour!). In short, in his relations

---

<sup>87</sup>See C. S. Lewis, *Mere Christianity*, pp. 52-53.

with humankind, God's freedom is circumscribed by humankind just as the freedom of humankind is circumscribed by God."<sup>88</sup>

Verses 22-23 summarize Moses' future messages to Pharaoh on several different occasions.

Israel was God's first-born son in the sense that it was the nation among all others on which God had chosen to place His special blessing. It was first in rank and preeminence by virtue of God's sovereign choice to bless Abraham's seed.

The essence of the conflict between Pharaoh and Yahweh was the issue of sovereignty. Sovereignty refers to supreme power and authority. Regarding God, it refers to the fact that He has supreme power and authority, more than any other entity. Sovereignty does not specify how one exercises supreme power and authority. Specifically, it does not mean that God exercises His sovereignty by controlling everything that happens directly. Scripture reveals that this is not how He exercises His sovereignty. Rather He allows people some freedom yet maintains supreme power and authority.

Were Egypt's gods or Israel's God sovereign? This issue stands out clearly in the following verses.

"The Egyptian state was not a man-made alternative to other forms of political organization [from the Egyptian point of view]. It was god-given, established when the world was created; and it continued to form part of the universal order. In the person of Pharaoh a superhuman being had taken charge of the affairs of man. . . . The monarch then was as old as the world, for the creator himself had assumed kingly office on the day of creation. Pharaoh was his descendant and his successor."<sup>89</sup>

Pharaoh would not release Yahweh's metaphorical son, Israel. Therefore Yahweh would take Pharaoh's metaphorical son, namely, the Egyptians as a people, and his physical son, thus proving His sovereignty.

4:24-26      This brief account raises several questions.

---

<sup>88</sup>David Gunn, "The 'Hardening of Pharaoh's Heart': Plot, Character and Theology in Exodus 1-14," *Art and Meaning: Rhetoric in Biblical Literature*, pp. 88-89. For a more strongly Calvinistic explanation of the hardening of Pharaoh's heart, see G. K. Beale, "An Exegetical and Theological Consideration of the Hardening of Pharaoh's heart in Exodus 4-14 and Romans 9," *Trinity Journal* 5NS:2 (Autumn 1984):129-54. For a helpful discussion of several ways of explaining God's freedom and our freedom, see Axel D. Steuer, "The Freedom of God and Human Freedom," *Scottish Journal of Theology* 36:2:163-180.

<sup>89</sup>Henri Frankfort, *Ancient Egyptian Religion*, p. 30.

Evidently God afflicted Moses because Moses had not been obedient to God. He failed to circumcise at least one of his two sons (18:3-4). The Egyptians practiced partial circumcision on adults.<sup>90</sup> God's sentence for this sin of omission was death ("cut off from his people," cf. Gen. 17:14). God was ready to carry out this sentence on Moses for his failure (cf. 1 John 5:16). In doing this God was making Moses face his own incomplete obedience that reflected his lack of faith in God. God afflicted Moses, but whether He did so naturally or supernaturally is unclear and unimportant. In this incident God was bringing Moses to the place he brought Jacob when He wrestled with him at the Jabbok (Gen. 32). He was getting him to acknowledge His sovereignty.<sup>91</sup>

Zipporah ("little bird") performed the operation at her husband's insistence. It is obvious that she did not approve of it. Most scholars believe that Zipporah cut off the foreskin and threw it at Moses' feet. One writer believed that she touched Moses' genitals with her son's foreskin.<sup>92</sup> Another argued that she threw it at the feet of the preincarnate Christ.<sup>93</sup> Perhaps because of her resistance to do the will of God Moses sent her and his sons back to her father at this time. Moses may have sent her back during or before the plagues, when his life might have been in danger from the Egyptians. We have no record of when Moses' household returned to Midian, but we read of them rejoining Moses later at Sinai (18:2).

The "bridegroom of blood" figure (v. 26) evidently means as follows. Apparently Zipporah regarded her act of circumcising her son as what removed God's hand of judgment from Moses and restored him to life and to her again. It was as though God had given Moses a second chance and he had begun life as her husband over as a bridegroom (cf. Jonah).<sup>94</sup> She had accepted Yahweh's authority and demands and was now viewing Moses in the light of God's commission. She abandoned her claim to Moses and made him available to Yahweh's service.<sup>95</sup> "You are a bridegroom of blood to me," may have been an ancient marital relationship formula recalling circumcision as a premarital rite.<sup>96</sup>

"Moses has been chosen and commissioned by God, but he has shown himself far from enthusiastic about confronting the Pharaoh and threatening him with the death of his son. YHWH sets about showing Moses that although he is safe

---

<sup>90</sup>J. M. Sasson, "Circumcision in the Ancient Near East," *Journal of Biblical Literature* 85 (1966):473-74.

<sup>91</sup>See M. J. Oosthuizen, "Some thoughts on the interpretation of Exodus 4:24-26," *OTWSA* 29(1986):22-28.

<sup>92</sup>Durham, p. 58.

<sup>93</sup>Ronald B. Allen, "The 'Bloody Bridegroom' in Exodus 4:24-26," *Bibliotheca Sacra* 153:611 (July-September 1996):259-69.

<sup>94</sup>Cassuto, pp. 59-61.

<sup>95</sup>Oosthuizen, p. 26.

<sup>96</sup>T. C. Mitchell, "The Meaning of the Noun HTN in the Old Testament," *Vetus Testamentum* 19 (1969):94-105, 111-12.

from other men (Ex. iv 19) he faces a much greater danger to his life in the wrath of the God whom he is so reluctant to serve (iv 14). Like Jacob before him, Moses must undergo a night struggle with his mysterious God before he can become a worthy instrument of YHWH and can enjoy a completely satisfactory relationship with his brother. In all this, Moses, like Jacob, is not only an historical person, but also a paradigm. The Israelite people, the people whom YHWH has encountered and whom he will slay with pestilence and sword if they go not out into the wilderness to serve him (v. 3), must ponder this story with fear and trembling.

"If Israel is to survive the wrath of YHWH, it must, our text implies, be by virtue of the spilling of atoning blood . . . Gershom's blood saves Moses, just as the blood of the Passover lamb will save the Israelites. Since for the sin of the Pharaoh his son's blood will be shed, it is appropriate that the blood which saves Moses should not be his own, but that of his son. It is also fitting that this blood should be blood shed during the rite of circumcision. Since before the Passover lamb is eaten the participants must all be circumcised, it is right that the neglect of Gershom's circumcision (though this omission is not the cause of the attack) should be repaired. The boy cannot be circumcised by his father, who is otherwise engaged, so Zipporah takes it upon herself, acting on behalf of her absent father, Jethro (hence the words to Moses 'You are my son-in-law by virtue of blood, the blood of circumcision'), to perform the rite, thus showing herself to be a worthy member of the elite class typified by Rahab the Canaanite harlot and Ruth the Moabitess—the foreign woman who puts Israelites to shame and earns the right to be held up as a model for imitation. Why does she touch Moses' *raglayim* ["feet"] with the severed foreskin? Although, as I have argued, Moses is to be thought of as already circumcised, this action of his wife is, I have suggested, to be construed as a symbolic act of re-circumcision: Moses as representative of the people as a whole is thus symbolically prepared for the imminent Passover celebration. The vocation of the Israelite is a matter of high moment. One's reluctance to serve YHWH wholeheartedly has to be broken down in a fearsome lone struggle in the darkness, and even then before one can meet YHWH there must be a twofold shedding of blood, the blood of circumcision and that of the Passover lamb. Furthermore, the pride of the male Israelite in his high vocation must needs be qualified, by reflecting

that in his mysterious strategies for the world YHWH often employs in major roles those who are neither male nor even Israelite."<sup>97</sup>

These few verses underscore a very important principle. Normally before God will use a person publicly he or she must first be obedient to God at home (cf. 1 Tim. 3:4-5).

"This story of Moses shows that God would rather have us die than take up His work with unconsecrated hearts and unsundered wills."<sup>98</sup>

4:27-31 Aaron was evidently in Egypt when God told him to meet Moses and directed him to Horeb (v. 27). Moses was apparently on his way from Midian back to Egypt when Aaron met him. Compare the reunion of Jacob and Esau (Gen. 33).

The Israelites believed what Moses and Aaron told them and what their miracles confirmed. They believed that the God of their fathers had appeared to Moses and had sent him to lead them out of Egypt and into the Promised Land (v. 31; cf. 3:6—4:9).

The relationship of faith and worship is clear in verse 31. Worship is an expression of faith.

### **B. GOD'S DEMONSTRATIONS OF HIS SOVEREIGNTY CHS. 5—11**

God permitted the conflict between Moses and Pharaoh for five reasons at least.

1. In this conflict God displayed His superior power and sovereignty over Pharaoh and the gods of Egypt.
2. God strengthened the faith of His people so that they would trust and obey Him and thereby realize all of His gracious purposes for them as a nation.
3. God also used these events to heighten anticipation of and appreciation for the redemption He would provide. The Israelites would forever after look back on the Exodus as the greatest demonstration of God's love at work for them.
4. These conflicts show how divine sovereignty works with human freedom. God exercises His sovereignty by allowing people a measure of freedom to make choices, for which he holds them responsible.
5. They also clarify how God hands people over to the consequences of the sins they insist on pursuing as punishment for their sins.

---

<sup>97</sup>Bernard P. Robinson, "Zipporah to the Rescue: A Contextual Study of Exodus IV 24-6," *Vetus Testamentum* 36:4 (October 1986):459-61.

<sup>98</sup>Meyer, p. 81.

"It is impossible to find a more exact illustration of the truth of Rom. i. than that presented in this story of Pharaoh's conflict with Jehovah."<sup>99</sup>

### **1. Pharaoh's response to Moses and Aaron's initial request 5:1—6:1**

5:1-9

At Moses and Aaron's first audience with Pharaoh they simply presented God's command (v. 1).<sup>100</sup> They did not perform miracles but asked for permission to leave Egypt.

The Israelites could have worshipped the gods of Egypt in the land, but they had to leave Egypt to worship a non-Egyptian God. Moses' request was a request to exercise a basic human right, namely, freedom of worship.

"Exodus 5:1-5 introduces another aspect of labour in Egypt: claims for time off work, and specifically for worship or religious holidays. On this topic, useful background comes from the extensive, fragmentary and often very detailed records kept for the activities of the royal workmen (who lived at the Deir el-Medina village), who cut the royal tombs in the Valleys of the Kings and Queens in Western Thebes, c. 1530-1100 B.C.

"Daily notes were kept for the men's attendances at work or of their absences from it. Sometimes reasons for absence are given. . . . The entire workforce might be off for up to 8 or 14 days, especially if interruptions, official holidays and 'weekends' came together. In Ancient Egypt—as elsewhere—major national festivals (usually main feasts of chief gods) were also public holidays. Then, each main city had its own holidays on main feasts of the principal local god(s). Besides all this, the royal workmen at Deir el-Medina can be seen claiming time off for all kinds of reasons, including 'offering to his god,' '(off) for his feast'; even 'brewing for his feast' or for a specific deity. Not only individuals but groups of men together could get time off for such observances. And a full-scale feast could last several days.

"What was true in Thebes or Memphis would apply equally at Pi-Ramesse (Raamses). So, when Moses requested time off from Pharaoh, for the Hebrews to go off and celebrate a feast to the Lord God, it is perhaps not too surprising that Pharaoh's reaction was almost 'not another holiday!'"<sup>101</sup>

<sup>99</sup>Ibid., p. 90.

<sup>100</sup>For an introduction to Liberation Theology, see Wolf, pp. 130-31.

<sup>101</sup>Kenneth Kitchen, "Labour Conditions in the Egypt of the Exodus," *Buried History* (September 1984):47-48.

Pharaoh was not only the king of Egypt, but the Egyptians regarded him as a divine person; he was a god (v. 2).<sup>102</sup> Consequently when Moses and Aaron asked Pharaoh to accede to the command of Yahweh, Pharaoh saw this request as a threat to his sovereignty. He knew (i.e., had respect for) the gods of Egypt, but he did not know (have respect for) Yahweh, the God of his foreign slaves. If Yahweh had identified Himself with these slaves, and if He had not already delivered them, why should Pharaoh fear and obey Him?

"It required no ordinary daring to confront the representative of a long line of kings who had been taught to consider themselves as the representatives and equals of the gods. They were accustomed to receive Divine titles and honours, and to act as irresponsible despots. Their will was indisputable, and all the world seemed to exist for no other reason than [to] minister to their state."<sup>103</sup>

"These words ["Who is the LORD that I should obey His voice to let Israel go? I do not know the LORD . . ."] form the motivation for the events that follow, events designed to demonstrate who the Lord is.

"Thus as the plague narratives begin, the purpose of the plagues is clearly stated: 'so that the Egyptians will know that I am the LORD' (7:5). Throughout the plague narratives we see the Egyptians learning precisely this lesson (8:19; 9:20, 27; 10:7). As the narratives progress, the larger purpose also emerges. The plagues which God had sent against the Egyptians were 'to be recounted to your son and your son's son . . . so that you may know that I am the LORD.'"<sup>104</sup>

"The point is clear from the chapter: when the people of God attempt to devote their full service and allegiance to God, they encounter opposition from the world."<sup>105</sup>

In their second appeal to Pharaoh, Moses and Aaron used milder terms (v. 3). They presented themselves not as ambassadors of Yahweh but as representatives of their brethren. They did not mention the name "Yahweh," that was unknown to Pharaoh, or "Israel," that would have struck him as arrogant. They did not command but requested ("Please . . ."). Moreover they gave reasons for their request: their God had appeared to them, and they feared His wrath if they disobeyed Him.

---

<sup>102</sup>See Frankfort, ch. 2: "The Egyptian State."

<sup>103</sup>Meyer, p. 88.

<sup>104</sup>Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch . . .*, pp. 249-50.

<sup>105</sup>The NET Bible note on 5:1.

"Moses . . . appealed to him [Pharaoh] almost precisely as, centuries after, Paul addressed the assembly on Mars Hill . . . [cf. Acts 17:22-23]."<sup>106</sup>

The Egyptians regarded the sacrifices that the Israelites would offer as unacceptable since almost all forms of life were sacred in Egypt. They believed their gods manifested themselves through cows, goats, and many other animals.

"The Egyptians considered sacred the lion, the ox, the ram, the wolf, the dog, the cat, the ibis, the vulture, the falcon, the hippopotamus, the crocodile, the cobra, the dolphin, different varieties of fish, trees, and small animals, including the frog, scarab, locust, and other insects. In addition to these there were anthropomorphic gods; that is, men in the prime of life such as Anen, Atum, or Osiris."<sup>107</sup>

"Where did Moses get the idea that they should have a pilgrim feast and make sacrifices? God had only said they would serve Him in that mountain. In the OT the pilgrim feasts to the sanctuary three times a year incorporated the ideas of serving the LORD and keeping the commands. So the words here simply use the more general idea of appearing before their God. And, they would go to the desert because there was no homeland yet. Only there could they be free."<sup>108</sup>

Pharaoh's reply to Moses and Aaron's second appeal was even harsher than his response to their first command (v. 5; cf. v. 1). Their aggressive approach may have been what God used to cause Pharaoh to harden his heart initially.

5:11-21 Stubble was the part of the corn or grain stalk that remained standing after field hands had harvested a crop (v. 12). This the Israelites chopped up and mixed with the clay to strengthen their bricks.

"In 2:23 the cry of the people went up before God. By contrast, here in 5:15 the cry of the people is before Pharaoh. It is as if the author wants to show that Pharaoh was standing in God's way and thus provides another motivation for the plagues which follow."<sup>109</sup>

"This Pharaoh, so unreasonable with men and so stingy with straw, is about to be shown up before Yahweh as no more than a man of straw."<sup>110</sup>

---

<sup>106</sup>Meyer, p. 107.

<sup>107</sup>William Ward, *The Spirit of Ancient Egypt*, p. 123.

<sup>108</sup>The NET Bible note on 5:3.

<sup>109</sup>Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch . . .*, p. 250.

<sup>110</sup>Durham, p. 66.

The Israelites turned on Moses just as the Israelites in Jesus' day turned against their Savior.

"The Lord God brought a vine out of Egypt, but during the four hundred years of its sojourn there, it had undeniably become inveterately degenerate and wild."<sup>111</sup>

5:22—6:1 Moses' prayer of inquiry and complaint reveals the immaturity of his faith at this time. He, too, needed the demonstrations of God's power that followed.

"By allowing us to listen to Moses' prayer to God, the author uncovers Moses' own view of his calling. It was God's work, and Moses was sent by God to do it."<sup>112</sup>

This section climaxes with the apparent failure of Yahweh's plan to rescue Israel. This desperate condition provides the pessimistic backdrop for the supernatural demonstrations of Yahweh's power that follow.

## **2. Moses and Aaron's equipment as God's messengers 6:2—7:7**

The writer gave the credentials of God and His representatives, Moses and Aaron, in these verses.

6:2-9 God explained to Moses that He would indeed deliver Israel out of Egypt in spite of the discouragement that Moses had encountered so far. God proceeded to remind Moses of His promises to the patriarchs and to reveal more of Himself by expounding one of His names.

"During the patriarchal period the characteristic name of God was 'God Almighty' (6:3; see, for example, Gen. 17:1), the usual translation of the Hebrew *El Shaddai*, which probably literally means 'God, the Mountain One.' That phrase could refer to the mountains as God's symbolic home (see Ps. 121:1), but it more likely stresses His invincible power and might. . . .

"But during the Mosaic period the characteristic name of God was to be 'the LORD,' the meaning of which was first revealed to Moses himself (Exod. 3:13-15). Exodus 6:3 is not saying that the patriarchs were totally ignorant of the name *Yahweh*."<sup>113</sup>

---

<sup>111</sup>Meyer, p. 18.

<sup>112</sup>Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch . . .*, p. 250.

<sup>113</sup>Youngblood, p. 41.

The occurrences of "El Shaddai" in Genesis are in 17:1; 28:3; 35:11; 43:14; 48:3; and partially in 49:3. The name occurs 30 times in Job. Shaddai may come from the Hebrew *sd* ("breast") or from the Ugaritic *tdy* ("mountain"). In the former case it would mean "God the Nourisher," and in the latter "God of the Mountain."<sup>114</sup>

"Thus though the name YHWH existed well before the time of Moses, the *meaning* of that name was not revealed until the time of Moses."<sup>115</sup>

"Yahweh" reveals God as "the absolute Being working with unbounded freedom in the performance of His promises."<sup>116</sup> It emphasizes God's power at work for His people, as He was about to demonstrate it.

"Whatever the situation or need (in particular, the redemption from Egypt, but also future needs), God will 'become' the solution to that need."<sup>117</sup>

In this revelation God promised to do three things for Israel.

1. He would deliver the Israelites from their Egyptian bondage (v. 6). Moses communicated this in a threefold expression suggesting the completeness of the deliverance.
2. He would adopt Israel as His nation (v. 7). This took place at Sinai (19:5).
3. He would bring Israel into the Promised Land (v. 8).

Note the repetition of the phrase "I will" seven times in these verses, emphasizing the fact that God would certainly do this for Israel. The whole revelation occurs within the statements "I am the LORD" (vv. 2, 8) which formalize it and further stress the certainty of these promises.

"So this passage effectively paves the way for the transition from the simple covenant with Abraham to the complex new (Mosaic) covenant with the people as a whole."<sup>118</sup>

"This small section of narrative also sketches out the argument of the whole Pentateuch. God made a covenant with the patriarchs to give them the land of Canaan (Ex 6:4). He remembered his covenant when he heard the cry of the Israelites in Egyptian bondage (v. 5). He is now going

---

<sup>114</sup>See Kaiser, "Exodus," p. 340.

<sup>115</sup>Gianotti, p. 39. See Johnson, p. 56; and Robert Dick Wilson, "Yahweh (Jehovah) and Exodus 6:3," in *Classical Evangelical Essays in Old Testament Interpretation*, pp. 29-40.

<sup>116</sup>Keil and Delitzsch, 1:467.

<sup>117</sup>Gianotti, p. 46. See also the note on verse 3 in the NET Bible.

<sup>118</sup>Jonathan Magonet, "The Rhetoric of God: Exodus 6:2-8," *Journal for the Study of the Old Testament* 27 (October 1983):66.

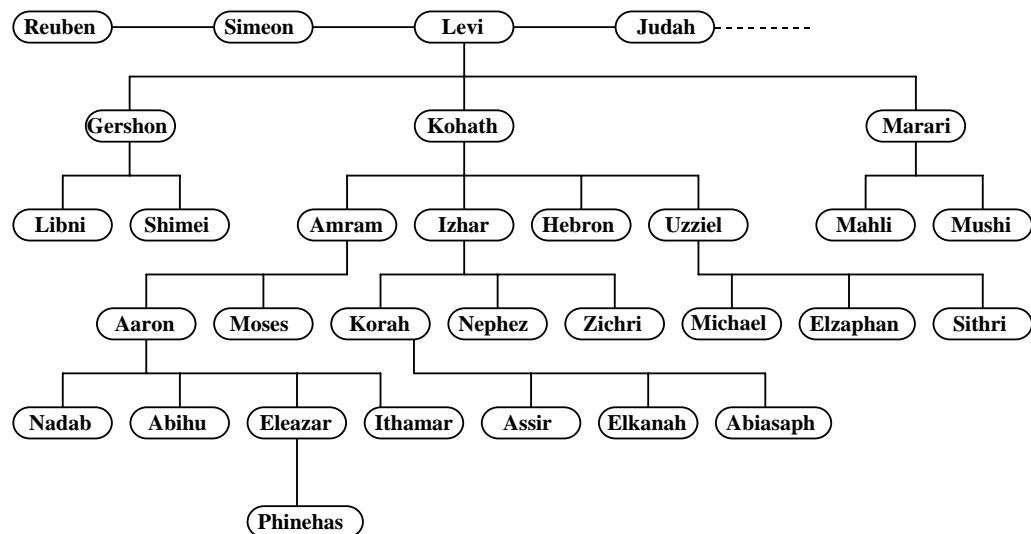
to deliver Israel from their bondage and take them to himself as a people and be their God (v. 6). He will also bring them into the land which he swore to give to their fathers (v. 8). The die is cast for the remainder of the events narrated in the Pentateuch."<sup>119</sup>

6:10-13 Moses continued to claim lack of persuasive skill in speech (v. 12; cf. v. 30). He failed to grasp the full significance of what God had just revealed to him. Jesus' disciples, and we, had and have the same problem. It was God, not Moses, who would bring the people out of Egypt.

"Seven distinct objections were raised by Moses as reasons why he should not undertake the arduous task to which he was called. They have been thus epitomised [*sic*]: Lack of fitness, 'who am I, that I should go?' (iii. 11); lack of words, 'what shall I say?' (iii. 13); lack of authority, 'they will not believe me' (iv. 1); lack of power of speech, 'I am not eloquent' (iv. 10); lack of special adaptation, 'Send by whom Thou wilt send' (iv. 13); lack of success at his first attempt, 'neither hast Thou delivered Thy people at all' (v. 23); lack of acceptance, 'the children of Israel have not hearkened unto me' (vi. 12)."<sup>120</sup>

6:14-30 The selective genealogy (cf. Num. 3:27-28) of Moses and Aaron accredits these men as God's divinely appointed messengers (prophets) to the Israelites.

#### MOSES' FAMILY TREE (EXOD. 6:14-27)



<sup>119</sup>Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch* . . . , p. 251.

<sup>120</sup>Meyer, p. 62.

7:1-7

Moses was "as God" to Pharaoh in that he was the person who revealed God's will (v. 1). Pharaoh was to be the executor of that will. Aaron would be Moses' prophet as he stood between Moses and Pharaoh and communicated Moses and God's will to the king. Verse 1 helps us identify the essential meaning of the Hebrew word *nabhi* (prophet; cf. 4:10-16; Deut. 18:15-22; Isa. 6:9; Jer. 1:7; Ezek. 2:3-4; Amos 7:12-16). This word occurs almost 300 times in the Old Testament and "in its fullest significance meant 'to speak fervently for God'"<sup>121</sup>

"The pith of Hebrew prophecy is not prediction or social reform but the declaration of divine will"<sup>122</sup>

God referred to the miracles Moses would do as signs (i.e., miracles with special significance) and wonders (miracles producing wonder or awe in those who witnessed them, v. 3).<sup>123</sup> The text usually calls them "plagues," but clearly they were "signs," miracles that signified God's sovereignty.

The ultimate purpose of God's actions was His own glory (v. 5). The glory of God was at stake. The Egyptians would acknowledge God's faithfulness and sovereign power in delivering the Israelites from their bondage and fulfilling their holy calling. God's intention was to bless the Egyptians through Israel (Gen. 12:3), but Pharaoh would make that impossible by his stubborn refusal to honor God. Nevertheless the Egyptians would acknowledge Yahweh's sovereignty.

The writer included the ages of Moses and Aaron (80 and 83 respectively) as part of God's formal certification of His messengers (v. 7).<sup>124</sup>

"It is a common feature of biblical narratives for the age of their heroes to be stated at the time when some momentous event befalls them . . ."<sup>125</sup>

"D. L. Moody wittily said that Moses spent forty years in Pharaoh's court thinking he was somebody; forty years in the desert learning he was nobody; and forty years showing what God can do with somebody who found out he was nobody."<sup>126</sup>

<sup>121</sup>Leon J. Wood, *The Prophets of Israel*, p. 63. (

<sup>122</sup>Norman Gottwald, *A Light to the Nations*, p. 277. See also Edward J. Young, *My Servants the Prophets*, ch. III: "The Terminology of Prophetism," for discussion of how the Old Testament used the Hebrew words for prophets.

<sup>123</sup>See Ken L. Sarles, "An Appraisal of the Signs and Wonders Movement," *Bibliotheca Sacra* 145:577 (January-March 1988):57-82.

<sup>124</sup>See G. Herbert Livingston, "A Case Study of the Call of Moses," *Asbury Theological Journal* 42:2 (Fall 1987):89-113.

<sup>125</sup>Cassuto, pp. 90-91.

<sup>126</sup>Bernard Ramm, *His Way Out*, p. 54.

### **3. The attestation of Moses and Aaron's divine mission 7:8-13**

Pharaoh requested that Moses and Aaron perform a miracle to prove their divine authority since they claimed that God had sent them (vv. 9-10).

"What we refer to as the ten 'plagues' were actually judgments designed to authenticate Moses as God's messenger and his message as God's message. Their ultimate purpose was to reveal the greatness of the power and authority of God to the Egyptians (7:10—12:36) in order to bring Pharaoh and the Egyptians into subjection to God."<sup>127</sup>

The Jews preserved the names of the chief magicians even though the Old Testament did not record them. Paul said they were Jannes and Jambres (2 Tim. 3:9). These were not sleight-of-hand artists but wise men who were evidently members of the priestly caste (cf. Gen. 41:8). The power of their demonic gods lay in their "secret arts" (v. 11). They were able to do miracles in the power of Satan (1 Cor. 10:20; cf. Matt. 24:24; 2 Thess. 2:9-10; Rev. 13:13-14).<sup>128</sup> The superiority of the Israelites' God is clear in the superiority of Aaron's serpent over those of the Egyptian magicians (v. 12). The rod again represented regal authority and implied that Yahweh, not Pharaoh, was sovereign (cf. 4:2-5).

There are at least three possibilities regarding the Egyptian magicians' rods becoming snakes. The magicians may have received power to create life from Satan, with God's permission. Second, God may have given them this power directly. Third, their rods may have been rigid snakes that, when cast to the ground, were seen to be what they were, serpents.

Aaron's miracle should have convinced Pharaoh of Yahweh's sovereignty, but he chose to harden his heart in unbelief and disobedience. Consequently God sent the plagues that followed.

"The point of this brief section is that Yahweh's proof of his powerful Presence to the Pharaoh and thus to the Pharaoh's Egypt will be miraculous in nature."<sup>129</sup>

### **4. The first three plagues 7:14—8:19**

Psalm 78:43 places the scene of the plagues in northern Egypt near Zoan.

The plagues were penal; God sent them to punish Pharaoh for his refusal to obey God and to move him to obey Yahweh. They involved natural occurrences rather than completely unknown phenomena. At various times of the year gnats, flies, frogs, etc., were a problem to the Egyptians. Even the pollution of the Nile, darkness, and death were common to the Egyptians.

<sup>127</sup>J. Dwight Pentecost, *Thy Kingdom Come*, p. 83.

<sup>128</sup>See Merrill Unger, *Biblical Demonology*, p. 139; idem, *Demons in the World Today*, pp. 38-39.

<sup>129</sup>Durham, p. 92.

Evidence that the plagues were truly miraculous events is as follows. Some were natural calamities that God supernaturally intensified (frogs, insects, murrain, hail, darkness). Moses set the time for the arrival and departure of some. Some afflicted only the Egyptians. The severity of the plagues increased consistently. They also carried a moral purpose (9:27; 10:16; 12:12; 14:30).<sup>130</sup>

"The plagues were a combination of natural phenomena known to both the Egyptians and Israelites alike (due to their long sojourn in Egypt) heightened by the addition of supernatural factors."<sup>131</sup>

God designed them to teach the Egyptians that Yahweh sovereignly controls the forces of nature.<sup>132</sup> The Egyptians attributed this control to their gods.

"Up to now the dominate [*sic*] theme has been on preparing the deliverer for the exodus. Now, it will focus on preparing Pharaoh for it. The theological emphasis for exposition of the entire series of plagues may be: The sovereign Lord is fully able to deliver his people from the oppression of the world so that they might worship and serve him alone."<sup>133</sup>

Some writers have given a possible schedule for the plagues based on the times of year some events mentioned in the text would have normally taken place in Egypt. For example, lice and flies normally appeared in the hottest summer months. Barley formed into ears of grain and flax budded (9:31) in January-February. Locusts were a problem in early spring. The Jews continued to celebrate the Passover in the spring. This schedule suggests that the plagues began in June and ended the following April.<sup>134</sup>

"The Egyptians were just about the most polytheistic people known from the ancient world. Even to this day we are not completely sure of the total number of gods which they worshipped. Most lists include somewhere in the neighborhood of eighty gods . . ."<sup>135</sup>

Many students of the plagues have noticed that they appeared in sets of three. The accounts of the first plague in each set (the first, fourth, and seventh plagues) each contain a purpose statement in which God explained to Moses His reason and aim for that set of plagues (cf. 7:17; 8:22; 9:14). God had announced His overall purpose for the plagues in 7:4-5.<sup>136</sup> The last plague in each set of three came on Pharaoh without

---

<sup>130</sup>Free, p. 95.

<sup>131</sup>Ramm, p. 62.

<sup>132</sup>See R. Norman Whybray, *Introduction to the Pentateuch*, p. 72; and Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch . . .*, pp. 252-53.

<sup>133</sup>The NET Bible note on 7:14.

<sup>134</sup>Flinders Petrie, *Egypt and Israel*, pp. 35-36; and Greta Hort, "The Plagues of Egypt," *Zeitschrift für die Alttestamentliche Wissenschaft* 69 (1957):84-103; *ibid.*, 70 (1958):48-59.

<sup>135</sup>Davis, p. 86. Cf. Frankfort, p. 4. Other studies have discovered more than 1,200 gods. See E. A. W. Budge, *The Gods of the Egyptians*, pp. ix-x; and B. E. Shafer, ed., *Religion in Ancient Egypt: Gods, Myths, and Personal Practice*, pp. 7-87.

<sup>136</sup>Kaiser, "Exodus," pp. 348-49. Cf. C. J. Labuschagne, *The Incomparability of Yahweh in the Old Testament*, pp. 74-75, 92-94.

warning, but Moses announced the others to him beforehand. The first set of three plagues apparently affected both the Egyptians and the Israelites, whereas the others evidently touched only the Egyptians.

### **The water turned to blood (the first plague) 7:14-25**

The first mighty act of God serves in the narrative as a paradigm of the nine plagues that follow. Striking the Nile with the rod suggested dominion over creation and all the gods of Egyptian mythology. The Egyptians linked many of their gods with the life-giving force of the Nile. The tenth plague is unique in that it is both a part of the narrative of Exodus as a whole and is a mighty act of God in itself.<sup>137</sup>

Evidently Pharaoh had his morning devotions on the banks of the sacred Nile River. Moses and Aaron met him there as he prepared to honor the gods of the river (v. 15).

We could perhaps interpret the statement that the water turned into blood (v. 20) in the same way we interpret Joel's prophecy that the moon will turn into blood (Joel 2:31 cf. Rev. 6:12). Moses may have meant that the water appeared to be blood.<sup>138</sup> Nevertheless something happened to the water to make the fish die. The Hebrew word translated "blood" means blood, so a literal meaning is possible.<sup>139</sup> Furthermore the passage in Joel is poetry and therefore figurative, whereas the passage here in Exodus is narrative and may be understood literally.<sup>140</sup> Note too that this plague affected all the water in pools and reservoirs formed by the overflowing Nile as well as the water of the Nile and its estuaries (v. 19). Understood figuratively or literally a real miracle took place, as is clear from the description of the effects this plague had on the Egyptians and the fish in the Nile. The Egyptian wizards were able to duplicate this wonder, but they could not undo its effects.

"The most that can be said for their miracle-working is that it is a copy of what Moses and Aaron have accomplished and that it actually makes matters worse for their master and their people."<sup>141</sup>

"It was appropriate that the first of the plagues should be directed against the Nile River itself, the very lifeline of Egypt and the center of many of its religious ideas. The Nile was considered sacred by the Egyptians. Many of their gods were associated either directly or indirectly with this river and its productivity. For example, the great Khnum was considered the guardian of the Nile sources. Hapi was believed to be the 'spirit of the Nile' and its 'dynamic essence.' One of the greatest gods revered in Egypt was the god Osiris who was the god of the underworld. The Egyptians believed that the river Nile was his bloodstream. In the light of this latter

---

<sup>137</sup>Durham, p. 95.

<sup>138</sup>*The New Bible Dictionary*, s.v. "Plagues of Egypt," by Kenneth A. Kitchen, p. 1002.

<sup>139</sup>Durham, p. 97.

<sup>140</sup>Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch . . .*, p. 254.

<sup>141</sup>Durham, p. 98.

expression, it is appropriate indeed that the Lord should turn the Nile to blood! It is not only said that the fish in the river died but that the 'river stank,' and the Egyptians were not able to use the water of that river. That statement is especially significant in the light of the expressions which occur in the 'Hymn to the Nile': 'The bringer of food, rich in provisions, creator of all good, lord of majesty, sweet of fragrance'.<sup>142</sup> With this Egyptian literature in mind, one can well imagine the horror and frustration of the people of Egypt as they looked upon that which was formerly beautiful only to find dead fish lining the shores and an ugly red characterizing what had before provided life and attraction. Crocodiles were forced to leave the Nile. One wonders what worshipers would have thought of Hapi the god of the Nile who was sometimes manifest in the crocodile. Pierre Montet relates the following significant observation:

"At Sumenu (the modern Rizzeigat) in the Thebes area, and in the central district of the Fayum, the god Sepek took the form of a crocodile. He was worshipped in his temple where his statue was erected, and venerated as a sacred animal as he splashed about in his pool. A lady of high rank would kneel down and, without the slightest trace of disgust, would drink from the pool in which the crocodile wallowed. Ordinary crocodiles were mummified throughout the whole of Egypt and placed in underground caverns, like the one called the Cavern of the Crocodiles in middle Egypt."<sup>143</sup>

"Surely the pollution of the Nile would have taken on religious implications for the average Egyptian. Those who venerated Neith, the eloquent warlike goddess who took a special interest in the *lates*, the largest fish to be found in the Nile, would have had second thoughts about the power of that goddess. Nathor was supposed to have protected the *chromis*, a slightly smaller fish. Those Egyptians who depended heavily on fish and on the Nile would indeed have found great frustration in a plague of this nature."<sup>144</sup>

"Each year, toward the end of June, when the waters of the Nile begin to rise, they are colored a dark red by the silt carried down from the headwaters. This continues for three months, until the waters begin to abate, but the water, meanwhile, is wholesome and drinkable. The miracle of 7:17-21 involved three elements by which it differed from the accustomed phenomenon: the water was changed by the smiting of Moses' rod; the water became undrinkable; and the condition lasted just seven days (v. 25)."<sup>145</sup>

---

<sup>142</sup>James B. Pritchard, ed., *Ancient Near Eastern Texts*, p. 272.

<sup>143</sup>Pierre Montet, *Eternal Egypt*, p. 172.

<sup>144</sup>Davis, pp. 94-95.

<sup>145</sup>Johnson, p. 58.

The commentators have interpreted the reference to blood being throughout all Egypt "in (vessels of) wood and in (vessels of) stone" (v. 19) in various ways. Some believe this refers to water in exterior wooden and stone water containers. Others think it refers to water in all kinds of vessels used for holding water. Still others believe Moses described the water in trees and in wells. However this expression may refer to the water kept in buildings that the Egyptians normally constructed out of wood and stone.

"In the Bible a totality is more often indicated by mentioning two fundamental elements; see e.g., 'milk and honey' (Ex. iii 8, etc.) and 'flesh and blood' (Matt. xvi 17)."<sup>146</sup>

This is a synecdoche, a figure of speech in which a part stands for the whole or the whole represents a part. The quotation above supports the idea that God changed even the water stored in buildings to blood.

"Each of the first nine of the mighty-act accounts may be said to have the same fundamental point, expressed in much the same way. That point, concisely summarized, is that Yahweh powerfully demonstrates his Presence to a Pharaoh prevented from believing so that Israel may come to full belief."<sup>147</sup>

### **Frogs (the second plague) 8:1-15**

Before the second plague, Moses gave Pharaoh a warning, for the first time, and for the first time the plague touched Pharaoh's person.

"The god Hapi controlled the alluvial deposits and the waters that made the land fertile and guaranteed the harvest of the coming season. These associations caused the Egyptians to deify the frog and make the theophany of the goddess Heqt a frog. Heqt was the wife of the great god Khnum. She was the symbol of resurrection and the emblem of fertility. It was also believed that Heqt assisted women in childbirth. . . . The frog was one of a number of sacred animals that might not be intentionally killed, and even their involuntary slaughter was often punished with death."<sup>148</sup>

The goddess Heqt ". . . who is depicted in the form of a woman with a frog's head, was held to blow the breath of life into the nostrils of the bodies that her husband fashioned on the potter's wheel from the dust of the earth . . . ."<sup>149</sup>

"This second plague was not completely unrelated to the first, for the Nile and the appearance of the frogs were very much associated. The presence of the frogs normally would have been something pleasant and desirable,

---

<sup>146</sup>C. Houtman, "On the Meaning of Uba'esim Uba'abanim in Exodus VII 19," *Vetus Testamentum* 36:3 (1968):352.

<sup>147</sup>Durham, p. 99.

<sup>148</sup>Davis, p. 100.

<sup>149</sup>Cassuto, p. 101.

but on this occasion quite the opposite was true. The frogs came out of the rivers in great abundance and moved across the land into the houses, the bedchambers, the beds, and even moved upon the people themselves (v. 3). One can only imagine the frustration brought by such a multiplication of these creatures. They were probably everywhere underfoot bringing distress to the housewives who attempted to clear the house of them only to find that they made their way into the kneading troughs and even into the beds. It must have been a unique experience indeed to come home from a long day's work, slip into bed only to find that it has already been occupied by slimy, cold frogs! Whatever popularity the goddess Heqt must have enjoyed prior to this time would have been greatly diminished with the multiplication of these creatures who at this point must have tormented her devotees to no end."<sup>150</sup>

"Since the frog or toad was deified as the Egyptian goddess Heqt, who was believed to assist women in childbirth, there may be a touch of irony in the statement that large numbers of frogs would invade the Pharaoh's bedroom and even jump on his bed (v. 3)."<sup>151</sup>

The Egyptian magicians were able to bring up frogs, too (v. 7), but they seem to have lacked the ability to make them go away since Pharaoh asked Moses to get rid of them (v. 8). Satanic power does not generally work for the welfare of humanity but is basically destructive.

To impress upon Pharaoh that a personal God was performing these miracles (v. 10) Moses asked the king to set the time when the frogs should depart (v. 9). Yahweh was in charge of the very territory over which Pharaoh regarded himself as sovereign.

### **Gnats (the third plague) 8:16-19**

The Hebrew word translated "gnats" (*kinnim*) probably refers not to lice or fleas but to gnats. Kaiser suggested that mosquitoes may be in view.<sup>152</sup> The frogs had invaded the Egyptians' homes, but the gnats afflicted their bodies.

They were ". . . a species of gnats, so small as to be hardly visible to the eye, but with a sting which, according to Philo and Origin, causes a most painful irritation of the skin. They even creep into the eyes and nose, and after the harvest they rise in great swarms from the inundated rice fields."<sup>153</sup>

"The dust . . . became gnats" (v. 17) probably means that the gnats rose from the dust, resembled the dust in that they were so small, and were as numerous as the dust. Moses evidently used the language of appearance (here a metaphor).

---

<sup>150</sup>Davis, pp. 100-101.

<sup>151</sup>Youngblood, p. 54.

<sup>152</sup>Kaiser, "Exodus," p. 353.

<sup>153</sup>Keil and Delitzsch, 1:483.

The magicians failed to reproduce this miracle (v. 18). They had to confess that it was of divine origin and not the result of Moses and Aaron's human ability. The "finger of God" (v. 19) is a phrase denoting creative omnipotence in Scripture (31:18; Ps. 8:3; Luke 11:20). It is probably another synecdoche as well as an anthropomorphism (a depiction of God in human terms). Here the finger of God, a part, represents the totality, namely, all His power. See 1 Samuel 6:9 and Psalm 109:27 where the "hand of God" also pictures His power.

"The new element introduced in the account of the third of the mighty acts is the realization by Pharaoh's learned men that God or a god is in the midst of what is happening in Egypt."<sup>154</sup>

"At this point in the narrative we, the readers, see that the Egyptian magicians were using tricks in their earlier signs. Their confession plays an important role in uncovering the writer's real purpose in recounting these events."<sup>155</sup>

The magicians gave credit to "God" (Elohim), not Yahweh. They did not ascribe this miracle to the God of the Israelites but were only willing to say it had some supernatural origin.

"It is not clear against what specific deities this particular plague was directed. It is entirely possible, however, that the plague was designed to humiliate the official priesthood in the land, for it will be noted in verse 17 that these creatures irritated both man and beast, and this included 'all the land of Egypt.' The priests in Egypt were noted for their physical purity. Daily rites were performed by a group of priests known as the *Uab* or 'pure ones.' Their purity was basically physical rather than spiritual. They were circumcised, shaved the hair from their heads and bodies, washed frequently, and were dressed in beautiful linen robes.<sup>156</sup> In the light of this it would seem rather doubtful that the priesthood in Egypt could function very effectively having been polluted by the presence of these insects. They, like their worshipers, were inflicted with the pestilence of this occasion. Their prayers were made ineffective by their own personal impurity with the presence of gnats on their bodies.

"The priests in Egypt were a group of people to be reckoned with not only religiously but economically and politically. They controlled to a large degree, the minds and hearts of the people."<sup>157</sup>

The Egyptian priests wore animal masks representing various gods to help the people understand the god the mask portrayed and his activities.<sup>158</sup> This practice continues in some pagan religions even today.

---

<sup>154</sup>Durham, p. 109.

<sup>155</sup>Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch . . .*, p. 255.

<sup>156</sup>Montet, p. 177.

<sup>157</sup>Davis, p. 103.

<sup>158</sup>Arelene Wolinski, "Egyptian Masks: the Priest and His Role," *Archaeology* 40:1 (January-February 1987):22-29.

### **5. The fourth, fifth, and sixth plagues 8:20—9:12**

"As the Egyptian magicians saw nothing more than the finger of God in the miracle which they could not imitate, that is to say, the work of some deity, possibly one of the gods of the Egyptians, and not the hand of Jehovah the God of the Hebrews, who had demanded the release of Israel, a distinction was made in the plagues which followed between the Israelites and the Egyptians, and the former were exempted from the plagues: a fact which was sufficient to prove to anyone that they came from the God of Israel. To make this the more obvious, the fourth and fifth plagues were merely announced by Moses to the king. They were not brought on through the mediation of either himself or Aaron, but were sent by Jehovah at the appointed time; no doubt for the simple purpose of precluding the king and his wise men from the excuse which unbelief might still suggest, viz. that they were produced by the powerful incantations of Moses and Aaron."<sup>159</sup>

#### **Flies (the fourth plague) 8:20-32**

Moses announced this plague to Pharaoh like the first, in the morning near the Nile River (v. 20; cf. 7:15).

These insects were very annoying, even more bothersome than the gnats.

"When enraged, they fasten themselves upon the human body, especially upon the edges of the eyelids. . . . [they] not only tortured, 'devoured' (Ps. 78:45) the men, and disfigured them by the swellings produced by their sting, but also killed the plants in which they deposited their eggs . . . ." <sup>160</sup>

"The blood-sucking gadfly or dogfly was something to be abhorred and may in part have been responsible for the great deal of blind men in the land. . . . It might also be noted that the Ichneuman fly, which deposits its eggs on other living things upon which its larvae can feed, was regarded as the manifestation of the god Uatchit."<sup>161</sup>

God demonstrated His sovereignty over space as well as nature and time by keeping the flies out of Goshen and off the Israelites (v. 22). The exact location of Goshen is still unknown, but its general location seems to have been in the eastern half of the delta region of Egypt (cf. Gen. 46:28-29, 33-34; 47:1-6, 11).<sup>162</sup> Some of the commentators assumed that the first three plagues did not afflict the Israelites either, though the text does not say so explicitly (cf. 7:19; 8:2, 16, 17). God distinguished between the two groups of people primarily to emphasize to Pharaoh that Israel's God was the author of the plagues and that He was sovereign over the whole land of Egypt (v. 23).

<sup>159</sup>Keil and Delitzsch, 1:484.

<sup>160</sup>Ibid., 1:484-85.

<sup>161</sup>Davis, p. 106.

<sup>162</sup>Durham, p. 114.

For the first time Pharaoh gave permission for the Israelites to sacrifice to Yahweh (v. 25), but he would not allow them to leave Egypt. Pharaoh admitted that Yahweh was specifically the God of Israel ("your God"), but he did not admit that *he* had an obligation to obey Him.<sup>163</sup>

The Egyptians regarded the animals the Israelites would have sacrificed as holy and as manifestations of their gods. Consequently the sacrifices would have been an abomination.<sup>164</sup>

". . . we know from excavations that this Pharaoh, Amenhotep II, worshipped bulls."<sup>165</sup>

The abomination that the Israelites' sacrifice would have constituted to the Egyptians also may have consisted in the method by which the Israelites would have sacrificed these animals. The Egyptians themselves practiced animal sacrifices, but they had rigorous procedures for cleansing their sacrificial animals before they killed them, which the Israelites would not have observed.<sup>166</sup>

Pharaoh agreed to let the Israelites leave Egypt to sacrifice temporarily in the wilderness after Moses reminded him of the problems involved in sacrificing in Egypt (v. 28). Yet they were not to go very far from Goshen. Again Pharaoh asked Moses to pray that his God would remove the plague (v. 28; cf. 8:9-10).

"What is new in this fourth of the mighty acts, apart from the nature of the miracle itself, is the separation of the land of Goshen from the effects of miracle (there has been no mention of Goshen's fate in the earlier accounts), the negotiations between Pharaoh and Moses, with each of them setting conditions, and the allusion to the antipathy of the Egyptians to Israel worship [*sic*] (or to Israelite ways, and to Israelites in general)."<sup>167</sup>

### **Murrain (the fifth plague) 9:1-7**

This plague, apparently some kind of disease like anthrax, was more severe than the preceding ones in that it affected the personal property of the Egyptians for the first time.

"The whole creation is bound together by invisible cords. None can sin or suffer alone. No man liveth or dieth to himself. Our sins send their vibrations through creation, and infect the very beasts."<sup>168</sup>

---

<sup>163</sup>Meyer, p. 121.

<sup>164</sup>Cassuto, pp. 108-09. Cf. Cole, p. 95.

<sup>165</sup>Gispen, p. 94.

<sup>166</sup>See Ernst Hengstenberg, *Exodus and the Books of Moses*, p. 114; and J. Philip Hyatt, *Exodus*, p. 112.

<sup>167</sup>Durham, p. 115.

<sup>168</sup>Meyer, p. 122.

All the other plagues had caused the Egyptians irritation or pain to their bodies, but now God began to reduce their wealth.

"The religious implications of this plague are most interesting and instructive. A large number of bulls and cows were considered sacred in Egypt. In the central area of the Delta, four provinces chose as their emblems various types of bulls and cows. A necropolis of sacred bulls was discovered near Memphis which place was known for its worship of both Ptah and a sacred Apis bull. The Apis bull was considered the sacred animal of the God Ptah; therefore, the associated worship at the site of Memphis is readily understood. There was at any one time only one sacred Apis bull. As soon as it died another was chosen to take its place, an event that attracted a great deal of attention in the area of Memphis.<sup>169</sup> The sacred bull was supposed to have been recognized by twenty-eight distinctive marks that identified him as deity and indicated that he was the object of worship.<sup>170</sup>

"Another deity whose worship would have been affected by the impact of this plague was Hathor, the goddess of love, beauty and joy represented by the cow. The worship of this deity was centered mainly in the city of Denderah although its popularity is witnessed by representations both in upper and lower Egypt. This goddess is often depicted as a cow suckling the king giving him divine nourishment. In upper Egypt the goddess appears as a woman with the head of a cow. In another town—Hathor was a woman, but her head was adorned with two horns of a cow with a sun disc between them. Another deity associated with the effects of the plague would be Mnevis, a sacred bull venerated at Heliopolis and associated with the god Re."<sup>171</sup>

"Amenhotep II [the Pharaoh of the plagues] surpassed all his predecessors in his fanatical devotion to the worship of animals, and especially of the bull. In 1906 a statue made of sandstone was excavated representing a cow and Amenhotep II leaning his head under its head; he is also depicted kneeling under a cow, drinking its divine milk. He is thus seen as child and slave of the cow goddess. What a threat this must have been to him!"<sup>172</sup>

The expression "all the livestock" (v. 6) evidently refers to all cattle in the fields (v. 3). Some cattle survived this plague (cf. vv. 19, 20, 22).

The only new element in this fifth report is the notice that Pharaoh sent to Goshen to check on the predicted exclusion of the Israelites' livestock from the epidemic (v. 7).

---

<sup>169</sup>Montet, p. 172.

<sup>170</sup>Author not identified, *Archaeology and the Bible*, p. 181, cited by Davis.

<sup>171</sup>Davis, pp. 113-15.

<sup>172</sup>Gispen, p. 96.

### Boils (the sixth plague) 9:8-12

The "soot from a kiln" (v. 8) was significant in two respects. First, the soot was black and symbolized the blackness of skin in the disease linking the cause with the effect. Second, the kiln was probably one of the furnaces in which the Israelites baked bricks for Pharaoh as his slaves. These furnaces became a symbol of Israel's slavery (1:14; 5:7-19). God turned the suffering of the Israelites in the furnace of Egypt so that they and what they produced became a source of suffering to the Egyptians.

"The natural substratum of this plague is discovered by most commentators in the so-called Nile-blisters, which come out in innumerable little pimples upon the scarlet-coloured skin, and change in a short space of time into small, round, and thickly-crowded blisters. This is called by the Egyptians *Hamm el Nil*, or the heat of the inundation. According to Dr. *Bilharz*, it is a rash, which occurs in summer, chiefly towards the close at the time of the overflowing of the Nile, and produces a burning and pricking sensation upon the skin; or, in *Seetzen's* words, 'it consists of small, red, and slightly rounded elevations in the skin, which give strong twitches and slight stinging sensations, resembling those of scarlet fever' (p. 209). The cause of this eruption, which occurs only in men and not in animals, has not been determined; some attributing it to the water, and others to the heat."<sup>173</sup>

"This plague, like previous ones, most assuredly had theological implications for the Egyptians. While it did not bring death, it was serious and painful enough to cause many to seek relief from many of the Egyptian deities charged with the responsibility of healing. Serapis was one such deity. One is also reminded of Imhotep, the god of medicine and the guardian of healing sciences. The inability of these gods to act in behalf of the Egyptian surely must have led to deep despair and frustration. Magicians, priests, princes, and commoners were all equally affected by the pain of this judgment, a reminder that the God of the Hebrews was a sovereign God and superior to all man-made idols."<sup>174</sup>

"In this plague account we learn that the magicians were still hard at work opposing the signs of Moses [v. 11]. A new twist, however, is put on their work here. Their problem now is not that they cannot duplicate the sign—something which they would not likely have wanted to do; rather, they cannot 'stand before Moses because of the boils.' This is apparently intended to show that, like the earlier plagues, this plague did not affect the Israelites, represented here by Moses and Aaron. It also provides a graphic picture of the ultimate failure of the magicians to oppose the work of Moses and Aaron. The magicians lay helpless in their sickbed before the work of Moses and Aaron."<sup>175</sup>

<sup>173</sup>Keil and Delitzsch, 1:487.

<sup>174</sup>Davis, pp. 116-17.

<sup>175</sup>Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch . . .*, p. 256.

This is the first time we read that God hardened Pharaoh's heart (v. 12). If a person continues to harden his own heart, God will then harden it further in judgment (cf. Rom. 1). It is also the first indication that the Egyptian learned men could no longer resist Moses and his God.

"The lesson here is that when one ignores the prompting of the Lord time and time again (see 7:13, 22; 8:15, 19, 32; 9:7), the Lord will confirm that resistance and make belief impossible."<sup>176</sup>

### **6. The seventh, eighth, and ninth plagues 9:13—10:29**

Moses announced the purpose of the following plagues to Pharaoh "in the morning" (cf. 7:15; 8:20). This purpose was twofold: that Pharaoh personally might know God's power (v. 14) and that the whole world might know it (v. 16; cf. Rom. 9:17).

#### **Hail (the seventh plague) 9:13-35**

God sent the worst hailstorm Egypt had ever experienced (vv. 18, 24) and accompanied it with thunder, fire (lightning?), and rain (vv. 23, 34).<sup>177</sup>

"The recurring thunderclaps . . . , the lightning darting back and forth . . . , and the severity of the storm . . . all suggest the advent of Yahweh in theophany . . . and thus the Presence of Yahweh in a more dramatic and intense coming than anywhere in the mighty-act sequence to this point."<sup>178</sup>

Pharaoh's repentance was shallow; he acknowledged only his mistake and unfairness, but he did not repent of his blasphemy of Yahweh (v. 27). Moses perceived Pharaoh's true attitude. The king had not yet believed that Yahweh was sovereign (v. 29). Fearing Him means bowing in submission to Him as sovereign over all the earth (v. 30; cf. 10:3).

"What would the worshippers of Nut have thought when they looked skyward not to see the blessings of the sun and warmth, but the tragedy of storm and violence. Nut was the sky goddess. It was from her domain that this tragedy originated. One reflects upon the responsibilities of both Isis and Seth who also had responsibilities relating to agricultural crops. The black and burned fields of flax were a silent testimony to the impotence and incapability of wooden and stone deities."<sup>179</sup>

The Egyptians used flax (v. 31) to make linen cloth that they preferred over wool. The Egyptian priests, among other people, dressed in linen. This plague was a judgment on them, therefore. The Egyptians used barley (v. 31) to make beer and as animal food, but

<sup>176</sup>Merrill, in *The Old . . .*, p. 49. Cf. Heb. 6:6.

<sup>177</sup>See Robert B. Chisholm Jr., "The Polemic against Baalism in Israel's Early History and Literature," *Bibliotheca Sacra* 151:603 (July-September 1994):271-74.

<sup>178</sup>Durham, p. 128.

<sup>179</sup>Davis, p. 120.

the poorer people also ate it.<sup>180</sup> These two crops are in bud in late January and early February in lower (northern) Egypt, which enables us to identify the time of year when this plague took place.

This is the first miracle in which we see the presence of death.

### **Locusts (the eighth plague) 10:1-20**

Moses explained another purpose of God in sending further plagues in this context, namely, so the Israelites in future generations would believe in Yahweh's sovereignty (v. 2)

Locusts were and still are a menace in Egypt as well as in many other countries of the world. The wind drove them from the wetter areas to the whole land of Egypt, excluding Goshen, where they multiplied. They consumed the remaining half of the crops and trees left by the hail.<sup>181</sup> Among their other gods, the Egyptians prayed to one manifested as a locust that they believed would preserve them from attacks by this devastating insect.<sup>182</sup>

Pharaoh's permission for the male Israelites to leave Egypt to worship God brought on by the urging of his counselors was arbitrary. Egyptian females worshipped with their husbands, and Pharaoh could have permitted both men and women to worship Yahweh.

Pharaoh offered Moses three compromises, which the world still offers Christians. First, he suggested that the Israelites stay in Egypt (8:25). He said, in effect, You can be who you are, but live as a part of your larger culture; do not be distinctive. Second, he permitted them to leave Egypt but not to go far from it (8:28). He allowed them to separate from their culture but not drastically. Third, he gave permission for the males to leave, but their children had to remain in Egypt (10:8-11). Even godly parents are sometimes inclined to desire prosperity and worldly position for their children.

Pharaoh's servants seem to have been ready and willing to acknowledge Yahweh as a god, but for Pharaoh this conflict had greater significance. It was a test of sovereignty. The advice of Pharaoh's servants reflects their extreme distress (v. 7).

"The king who . . . has a direct knowledge of the predestined order of the universe, cannot consult mere mortals. His decisions are represented as spontaneous creative acts motivated by considerations which are beyond human comprehension, although he may graciously disclose some of them."<sup>183</sup>

Joseph had previously delivered the Egyptians from starvation, but now Moses brought them to starvation. Both effects were the result of official Egyptian policy toward Abraham's descendants (cf. Gen. 12:3).

---

<sup>180</sup>Kaiser, "Exodus," p. 363.

<sup>181</sup>On the tremendously destructive power of locusts, see Davis, pp. 120-22.

<sup>182</sup>See Montet, pp. 39, 169.

<sup>183</sup>Frankfort, p. 56.

Pharaoh's confession of sin and his request for forgiveness were also most unusual (v. 16).

"The Egyptian viewed his misdeeds not as sins, but as aberrations. They would bring him unhappiness because they disturbed his harmonious integration with the existing world; they might even be explicitly disapproved by one or another of the gods, but these were always ready to welcome his better insight. . . . It is especially significant that the Egyptians never showed any trace of feeling unworthy of the divine mercy. For he who errs is not a sinner but a fool, and his conversion to a better way of life does not require repentance but a better understanding."<sup>184</sup>

". . . the picture of a halting, confused Pharaoh plays well here at the conclusion of the plague narratives. It shows that Moses and Aaron were beginning to get on his nerves."<sup>185</sup>

The "Red Sea" (v. 19) is the present Red Sea that lies to the east and south of the delta region. Some students of Exodus have mistakenly called it the Sea of Reeds. This opinion is due to the large quantity of papyrus reeds and seaweeds that some scholars have claimed grew on its banks and floated on its waters. However these reeds do not grow in salt water.<sup>186</sup>

### **Darkness (the ninth plague) 10:21-29**

Since the other plagues to this point seem to have been natural phenomena, many commentators interpret this one as such too. The most common explanation for the darkness that lasted three days (v. 22) and affected the Egyptians but not the Israelites (v. 23) is that it resulted from a dust storm.

A wind ". . . which generally blows in Egypt before and after the vernal equinox and lasts two or three days, usually rises very suddenly, and fills the air with such a quantity of fine dust and coarse sand, that the sun loses its brightness, the sky is covered with a dense veil, and it becomes . . . dark. . . ."<sup>187</sup>

"In the light of Egyptian theology and practice, this [ninth] plague was very significant. To a large degree it struck at the very heart of Egyptian worship and humbled one of Egypt's greatest gods. The sun god Re was considered one of the great blessings in the land of Egypt. His faithfulness in providing the warmth and light of sun day after day without fail caused

---

<sup>184</sup>Ibid., p. 73.

<sup>185</sup>Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch* . . . , pp. 256-57.

<sup>186</sup>See Bernard F. Batto, "Red Sea or Reed Sea?" *Biblical Archaeology Review* 10:4 (July-August 1984):57-63, and my note on 14:2.

<sup>187</sup>Keil and Delitzsch, 1:498.

them to express great joy over the faithfulness of this deity. The attitude of the Egyptians regarding the sun is perhaps best expressed in what has been called 'a universalist hymn to the sun' translated by John Wilson.

"Hail to thee, beautiful Re of every day, who rises at dawn without ceasing, Khepri wearying (himself) with labor! Thy rays are in (one's) face, without one knowing it. Fine gold is not like the radiance of thee. Thou who has constructed thyself, thou didst fashion thy body, a shaper who was (himself) not shaped; unique in his nature, passing eternity, the distant one, under whose guidance are millions of ways, just as thy radiance is like the radiance of heaven and thy color glistens more than its surface.'<sup>188</sup>

"The faithful warmth and provision of the sun was something fully enjoyed by both the Egyptian statesman and the laborer who worked in the fields. They praised the sun because 'thou presentest thyself daily at dawn. Steadfast is thy sailing which carries thy majesty.'<sup>189</sup>

"Of particular significance with respect to this plague was the prestige of the god Amun-Re, the chief deity of Thebes and a sun god. In the New Kingdom period [when the plagues took place] this god was the Egyptian national god, part of a very important triad of deities including Amun-Re, his wife Mut, and their son Khons. Amun-Re was commonly represented by sacred animals such as the ram and the goose. A number of other deities were associated with the sun, sky, and moon; for example Aten was the deified sun disc. This god was proclaimed to be the only god by [Pharaoh] Akhenaten with emphasis on a special cult centered at Amarna. Atum was also another important god in lower Egypt whose worship was centered mainly at Heliopolis. He was the god of the setting sun and was usually depicted in human form. Sacred animals associated with this god were the snake and the lion. The god Khepre who often appeared in the shape of the beetle (*Scarabeus sacer*) was a form of the sun god Re. Another very important sun god was Horus often symbolized by a winged sun disc. He was considered to be the son of Osiris and Isis but also the son of Re and the brother of Seth. Harakhte, another form of Horus and identified with the sun, was venerated mainly at Heliopolis and was represented by the hawk.

"Among the deities affected by this tragic darkness was Hathor a sky goddess and likewise the goddess of love and joy. Hathor was the tutelary deity of the Theban necropolis. She was venerated particularly at Dendera and depicted with cow horns or was a human figure which was cow-headed. The sky goddess Nut would also have been involved in the

---

<sup>188</sup>Pritchard, pp. 367-68.

<sup>189</sup>Ibid., p. 368.

humiliation of this plague. What of the prestige of Thoth, a moon god of Hermopolis? He was also the god of writing and of the computation of time.

"This list could be greatly extended involving a number of other deities associated with the sun, stars, and light but the above are sufficient to indicate the tremendous importance of the sun and sunlight to the Egyptians. . . . One wonders what the prestige of Pharaoh must have been at this point. Among the divine attributes of Pharaoh was the fact that he was in fact a representation of Re ' . . . by whose beams one sees, he is one who illuminates the two lands [Upper and Lower Egypt] more than the sun disc.'"<sup>190</sup>

Pharaoh still did not submit completely to Yahweh's sovereign demands (v. 24), so a tenth plague followed.

"For the first time, Yahweh moves to make Pharaoh obstinate *during* the negotiations. Heretofore he has made Pharaoh stubborn *after* he has agreed to Moses' demands, after Yahweh's mighty action has ceased and before Moses can leave with the sons of Israel."<sup>191</sup>

"It is a sad farewell when God, in the persons of his servants, refuses anymore to see the face of the wicked."<sup>192</sup>

The world had begun in total darkness (Gen. 1:2), and now Egypt had returned to that chaotic state.<sup>193</sup> Richard Patterson argued convincingly that the origin of much of the apocalyptic imagery later in the Old Testament derives from the Exodus event.<sup>194</sup>

### **7. The proclamation of the tenth plague ch. 11**

". . . the slaying of the first-born is both the culmination of the plague narrative and the beginning of the passover tradition. Chapter 11 as a literary unit, therefore, points both backward and forward."<sup>195</sup>

Evidently Moses made this announcement to Pharaoh before leaving his presence (cf. 10:29; 11:8). Thus this chapter unfolds the narrative in logical rather than chronological order. Verses 1 and 2 give the foundation for the announcement in verses 4-8. Chronologically verses 1-3 point back to 3:19-22.

---

<sup>190</sup>Davis, pp. 125-28. His last quotation is from Pritchard, p. 431.

<sup>191</sup>Durham, p. 143.

<sup>192</sup>George Bush, *Notes on Exodus*, 1:30.

<sup>193</sup>Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch . . .*, p. 257.

<sup>194</sup>Richard D. Patterson, "Wonders in the Heavens and on the Earth: Apocalyptic Imagery in the Old Testament," *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society* 43:3 (September 2000):385-403.

<sup>195</sup>Childs, p. 161.

Whereas Moses and Aaron had been the mediators through whom God had sent the first nine plagues, this last one came directly from God.

11:1-3 The Israelites asked the Egyptians to give them the articles mentioned, not to lend them with a view to getting them back (v. 2).<sup>196</sup> The Israelites received many such gifts from the Egyptians, enough to build the tabernacle, its furniture, furnishings, and utensils, as well as the priests' garments. This reflects the respect and fear the Israelites enjoyed in Egypt following these plagues.

"The Egyptians thus are 'picked clean' (3:22 and 12:36) by Israel as a result of yet another action by Yahweh in behalf of his people, demonstrating the power of his Presence."<sup>197</sup>

11:4-8 The first-born sons, who were not old enough to be fathers themselves, would die (v. 5). This is a deduction supported by the following facts. First-born sons were symbolic of a nation's strength and vigor (cf. Gen. 49:3). First-born sons were also those through whom the family line descended. Sons old enough to be fathers who had themselves fathered sons were members of the older generation. The younger generation was the focus of this plague. It was the male children of the Israelites that Pharaoh had killed previously (1:15-22). When God later claimed the tribe of Levi in place of Israel's first-born whom He spared in this plague (Num. 3:12-13; cf. Exod. 22:29; 34:20), He chose only the males.

We owe God the first fruits of our labors because He is the source of all life and fruitfulness.

"In common with the rest of the ancient Near East, the Hebrews believed that the deity, as lord of the manor, was entitled to the *first share* of all produce. The *firstfruits* of plants and the *firstborn* of animals and man were his. The Lord demonstrated that he gave Egypt its life and owned it by taking its firstborn."<sup>198</sup>

Some critics of the Bible have challenged God's justice in putting to death so many "innocent" children. Looked at one way, *a priori*, whatever God does is right because He is God. Looked at another way, God as the giver and sustainer of life is righteous in withdrawing life from any creature at any time because life belongs to Him. He can take it as well as give it at will. Furthermore the fact that humans are all sinners and sin results in death means that God is just in requiring the punishment for any

<sup>196</sup>For a history of the interpretation of this controversial statement, see Yehuda T. Radday, "The Spoils of Egypt," *Annual of the Swedish Theological Institute* 12 (1983):127-47.

<sup>197</sup>Durham, p. 148.

<sup>198</sup>Bruce K. Waltke, "Cain and His Offering," *Westminster Theological Journal* 48:2 (Fall 1986):368.

individual's sin at any time. We do not have any claim on God's grace. God graciously did not kill all the Egyptians.

Moses' anger reflected God's wrath against Pharaoh for his stubborn rebellion (v. 8).

"To be in the presence of evil and not be angry is a dreadful spiritual and moral malady."<sup>199</sup>

11:9-10

"These two verses are considered by many commentators as redundant or misplaced. But they can easily be explained as a summary and epilogue of the Section of the Plagues.

"In the following section not only the course of events will change, but also the background and the *dramatis personae*. Till now the central theme was the negotiations conducted by Moses and Aaron on the one hand, and Pharaoh and his servants on the other, in Pharaoh's palace or its environs. But henceforth the principal hero of the drama will be the people of Israel in its totality, and the perspective will be enlarged. Moses and Aaron will no longer be sent to Pharaoh but to the Israelites, in order to prepare them for the exodus and to implement it; nor will they be enjoined again to perform acts for the purpose of bringing the plagues, for the last plague will take place of its own accord, through the instrumentality of the angel of the Lord. Since the episode about to be narrated represents a new theme, and one, moreover, of fundamental importance, it is desirable [*sic*] that before reading this account we should look back for a moment, and review generally the events that have taken place thus far, as well as the situation obtaining at the conclusion of those events. This review is provided for us in the verses under consideration."<sup>200</sup>

The theological lesson that Pharaoh and the Egyptians were to learn from this plague was that Yahweh would destroy the gods that the Egyptians' gods supposedly procreated. Pharaoh was a god and so was his first-born son who would succeed him. The Egyptians attributed the power to procreate to various gods. It was a power for which the Egyptians as well as all ancient peoples depended on their gods. By killing the first-born Yahweh was demonstrating His sovereignty once again. However this plague had more far-reaching consequences and was therefore more significant than all the previous plagues combined.

---

<sup>199</sup>Kaiser, "Exodus," p. 370.

<sup>200</sup>Cassuto, pp. 134-35.

"Possibly no land in antiquity was more obsessed with death than Egypt. The real power of the priesthood lay in its alleged ability to guarantee the dead a safe passage to the 'Western World' under the benign rule of Osiris. This terrible visitation which defied and defies all rational explanation, showed that Yahweh was not only lord of the forces of nature, but also of life and death."<sup>201</sup>

". . . it is by means of the account of the last plague that the author is able to introduce into the Exodus narrative in a clear and precise way the notion of redemption from sin and death. The idea of salvation from slavery and deliverance from Egypt is manifest throughout the early chapters of Exodus. The idea of redemption and salvation from death, however, is the particular contribution of the last plague, especially as the last plague is worked into the narrative by the author. . . .

"By means of the last plague, then, the writer is able to bring the Exodus narratives into the larger framework of the whole Pentateuch and particularly that of the early chapters of Genesis. In the midst of the judgment of death, God provided a way of salvation for the promised seed (Ge 3:15). Like Enoch (5:22-24), Noah (6:9), and Lot (19:16-19), those who walk in God's way will be saved from death and destruction."<sup>202</sup>

This tenth plague brought Yahweh's concentrated education of both the Egyptians and the Israelites to a climactic conclusion.

"In short, therefore, what were the essential purposes of these ten plagues? First of all, they were certainly designed to free the people of God. Second, they were a punishment upon Egypt for her portion in the long oppression of the Hebrews [cf. Gen. 15:13]. Third, they were designed to demonstrate the foolishness of idolatry. They were a supreme example both for the Egyptians and for Israel. It was by these that Jehovah revealed His uniqueness in a way that had never before been revealed (6:3; cf. 10:2). Finally, the plagues clearly demonstrated the awesome, sovereign power of God. In the Book of Genesis, God is described as the Creator of the heavens and the earth and all the laws of nature. In the Book of Exodus the exercise of that creative power is revealed as it leads to the accomplishment of divine goals. God's sovereignty is not only exercised over the forces of nature, but is also revealed against evil nations and their rulers."<sup>203</sup>

### **C. GOD'S REDEMPTION OF HIS PEOPLE 12:1—13:16**

Scholars differ in their opinions as to when Israel actually became a nation. Many have made a strong case for commencing national existence with the institution of the

---

<sup>201</sup>Ellison, p. 60.

<sup>202</sup>Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch . . .*, p. 258.

<sup>203</sup>Davis, pp. 151-52.

Passover, which this section records. The proper translation of the Hebrew word *pasah* is really "hover over" rather than "pass over."<sup>204</sup>

". . . properly understood, the Exodus also is precisely the event and the moment that coincides with the historical expression of God's election of Israel. The choice of Israel as the special people of Yahweh occurred not at Sinai but in the land of Goshen. The Exodus was the elective event; Sinai was its covenant formalization."<sup>205</sup>

God gave the Israelites a national calendar that set them apart from other nations (v. 2). They also received instructions for two national feasts that they were to perpetuate forever thereafter (vv. 14, 17, 24). Also Moses revealed and explained the event that resulted in their separation from Egypt here.

### **1. The consecration of Israel as the covenant nation 12:1-28**

"The account of the final proof of Yahweh's Presence in Egypt has been expanded by a series of instructions related to cultic [ritual worship] requirements designed to commemorate that proof and the freedom it purchased."<sup>206</sup>

#### **Directions for the Passover 12:1-14**

The Jews called their first month Abib (v. 2). After the Babylonian captivity they renamed it Nisan (Neh. 2:1; Esth. 3:7). It corresponds to our March-April. Abib means "ear-month" referring to the month when the grain was in the ear.

"The reference to the Passover month as the 'lead month,' 'the first of the year's months' is best understood as a *double entendre*. On the one hand, the statement may be connected with an annual calendar, but on the other hand, it is surely an affirmation of the theological importance of Yahweh's Passover."<sup>207</sup>

The spring was an appropriate time for the Exodus because it symbolized new life and growth. Israel had two calendars: one religious (this one) and one civil (23:16). The civil year began exactly six months later in the fall. The Israelites used both calendars until the Babylonian captivity. After that, they used only the civil calendar.<sup>208</sup>

---

<sup>204</sup>Meredith G. Kline, "The Feast of Cover-over," *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society* 37:4 (December 1994):497-510.

<sup>205</sup>Eugene H. Merrill, "A Theology of the Pentateuch," in *A Biblical Theology of the Old Testament*, p. 31. Cf. Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch . . .*, p. 259.

<sup>206</sup>Durham, p. 152.

<sup>207</sup>Ibid., p. 153.

<sup>208</sup>See James F. Strange, "The Jewish Calendar," *Biblical Illustrator* 13:1 (Fall 1986):28-32. Also see the Appendix of these notes for a chart of the Hebrew calendar.

". . . the sense of the verse is: you are now beginning to count a new year, now the new year will bring you a change of destiny."<sup>209</sup>

The Passover was a communal celebration. The Israelites were to observe it with their redeemed brethren, not alone (v. 4). They celebrated the corporate redemption of the nation corporately (cf. Luke 22:17-20; 1 Cor. 11:23-29).

Since the lamb was a substitute sacrifice its required characteristics are significant (v. 5; cf. John 1:29; 1 Cor. 5:7; 1 Pet. 1:19).

"Freedom from blemish and injury not only befitted the sacredness of the purpose to which they were devoted, but was a symbol of the moral integrity of the person represented by the sacrifice. It was to be a male, as taking the place of the male first-born of Israel; and a year old, because it was not till then that it reached the full, fresh vigour of its life."<sup>210</sup>

Some of the ancient rabbis taught that God wanted the Jews to sacrifice the Passover lamb exactly at sunset because of the instructions in verse 6 and Deuteronomy 16:6. However "at twilight" literally means "between the two evenings." The more widely held Jewish view was that the first evening began right after noon and the second began when the sun set.<sup>211</sup> In Josephus' day, which was also Jesus' day, the Jews slew the Passover lamb in mid-afternoon.<sup>212</sup> The Lord Jesus Christ died during this time (i.e., about 3:00 p.m., Matt. 27:45-50; Mark 15:34-37; Luke 23:44-46; 1 Cor. 5:7).

The sprinkling of the blood on the sides and top of the doorway into the house was a sign (v. 7; cf. v. 13). It had significance to the Jews. The door represented the house (cf. 20:10; Deut. 5:14; 12:17; et al.). The smearing of the blood on the door with hyssop was an act of expiation (cleansing; cf. Lev. 14:49-53; Num. 19:18-19). This act consecrated the houses of the Israelites as altars. They had no other altars in Egypt. They were not to apply the blood to the other member of the doorframe, the threshold, because someone might tread on it. The symbolic value of the blood made this action inappropriate. The whole ritual signified to the Jews that the blood (life poured out, Lev. 17:11) of a sinless, divinely appointed substitute cleansed their sins and resulted in their setting apart (sanctification) to God. The application of the blood as directed was a demonstration of the Israelites' faith in God's promise that He would pass over them (v. 13; cf. Heb. 11:28).

The method of preparing and eating the lamb was also significant (vv. 8-11). God directed that they roast it in the manner common to nomads rather than eating it raw as many of their contemporary pagans ate their sacrificial meat (cf. 1 Sam. 2:14-15). They were not to boil the lamb either (v. 9). Roasting enabled the host to place the lamb on the table undivided and unchanged in its essential structure and appearance (v. 9). This would have strengthened the impression of the substitute nature of the lamb. It looked like an animal rather than just meat.

---

<sup>209</sup>Cassuto, p. 137.

<sup>210</sup>Keil and Delitzsch, 2:10.

<sup>211</sup>Gispen, p. 117.

<sup>212</sup>Josephus, 14:4:3.

The unleavened bread was bread that had not risen (cf. 12:34). The bitter herbs—perhaps endive, chicory, and or other herbs native to Egypt—would later recall to the Israelites who ate them the bitter experiences of life in Egypt. However the sweetness of the lamb overpowered the bitterness of the herbs. The Israelites were not to eat the parts of the meal again as leftovers (v. 10). It was a special sacrificial meal, not just another dinner. Moreover they were to eat it in haste (v. 11) as a memorial of the events of the night when they first ate it, the night when God provided deliverance for His people.<sup>213</sup>

"Those consuming the meat were not to be in the relaxed dress of home, but in traveling attire; not at ease around a table, but with walking-stick in hand; not in calm security, but in haste, with anxiety."<sup>214</sup>

In slaying the king's son and many of the first-born animals, God smote the gods of Egypt that these living beings represented (v. 12). This was the final proof of Yahweh's sovereignty.

"The firstborn of Pharaoh was not only his successor to the throne, but by the act of the gods was a specially born son having divine property. Gods associated with the birth of children would certainly have been involved in a plague of this nature. These included Min, the god of procreation and reproduction, along with Isis who was the symbol of fecundity or the power to produce offspring. Since Hathor was not only a goddess of love but one of seven deities who attended the birth of children, she too would be implicated in the disaster of this plague. From excavations we already have learned of the tremendous importance of the Apis bull, a firstborn animal and other animals of like designation would have had a tremendous theological impact on temple attendants as well as commoners who were capable of witnessing this tragic event. The death cry which was heard throughout Egypt was not only a wail that bemoaned the loss of a son or precious animals, but also the incapability of the many gods of Egypt to respond and protect them from such tragedy."<sup>215</sup>

Egyptian religion and culture valued sameness and continuity very highly. The Egyptians even minimized the individual differences between the Pharaohs.

"The death of a king was, in a manner characteristic of the Egyptians, glossed over in so far as it meant a change."<sup>216</sup>

The Egyptians had to acknowledge the death of Pharaoh's son, however, as an event that Yahweh had brought to pass.

---

<sup>213</sup>For an explanation of the history and modern observance of the Passover by Jews, the Seder, or "order of service," see Youngblood, pp. 61-64. For an account of a Seder observance held in Dallas on April 2, 1988, see Robert Andrew Barlow, "The Passover Seder," *Exegesis and Exposition* 3:1 (Fall 1988):63-68.

<sup>214</sup>Durham, p. 154.

<sup>215</sup>Davis, p. 141.

<sup>216</sup>Frankfort, p. 102.

Note that God said that when *He* saw the blood He would pass over the Jews (v. 13). He did not say when *they* saw it. The ground of their security was propitiation. The blood satisfied God. Therefore the Israelites could rest. The reason we can have peace with God is that Jesus Christ's blood satisfied God. Many Christians have no peace because the blood of the Lamb of God does not satisfy them. They think something more has to supplement His work (i.e., human good works). However, God says the blood of the sacrifice He provided is enough (cf. 1 John 2:1-2).

One writer believed that the first Passover was the origin of the concept of "the day of the Lord," which is so prominent in the writing prophets. The day of the Lord that they referred to was an instance of divine intervention, similar to what God did at the first Passover, involving judgment and blessing.<sup>217</sup>

### **Directions for the Feast of Unleavened Bread 12:15-20**

The Feast of Unleavened Bread began with the Passover meal and continued for seven more days (v. 15). The bread that the Jews used contained no leaven (yeast), which made it like a cracker rather than cake in its consistency. The Old Testament uses leaven as a symbol of sin often. Leaven gradually permeates dough, and it affects every part of the dough. Here it not only reminded the Israelites in later generations that their ancestors fled Egypt in haste, before their dough could rise. It also reminded them that their lives should resemble the unleavened bread as redeemed people. Bread is the staff of life and represents life. The life of the Israelites was to be separate from sin since they had received new life as a result of God's provision of the Passover lamb. Eating unleavened bread for a week and removing all leaven from their houses would have impressed the necessity of a holy life upon the Israelites.

"For us the leaven must stand for the selfness which is characteristic of us all, through the exaggerated instinct of self-preservation and the heredity received through generations, which have been a law to themselves, serving the desires of the flesh and of the mind. We are by nature self-confident, self-indulgent, self-opinionated; we live with self as our goal, and around the pivot of I our whole being revolves."<sup>218</sup>

Anyone who refused to abide by these rules repudiated the spiritual lesson contained in the symbols and was therefore "cut off from Israel." This phrase means to experience separation from the rights and privileges of the nation through excommunication or, more often, death.<sup>219</sup>

"Playing fast and loose with God's prescribed practices is to show disrespect for God's honor and dignity."<sup>220</sup>

---

<sup>217</sup>Benno Jacob, *The Second Book of the Bible: Exodus*, p. 315.

<sup>218</sup>Meyer, pp. 138-39.

<sup>219</sup>Cf. Keil and Delitzsch, 1:224; and Gordon J. Wenham, *The Book of Leviticus*, pp. 241-2.

<sup>220</sup>Waltke, *An Old Testament Theology*, p. 466.

The Israelites celebrated the Passover on the fourteenth of Abib, and the Feast of Unleavened Bread continued through the twenty-first (v. 18). God's call to the Israelites to live holy lives arose from what God had done for them. Consecration follows redemption; it is not a prerequisite for redemption. Similarly God calls us to be holy in view of what He has done for us (cf. Rom. 12:1-2). He does not say we can experience redemption if we become holy first.

Sunset ended one day and began the next for the Jews (cf. Gen. 1:5; et al.).

### **The communication and execution of the directions concerning the Passover 12:21-28**

Hyssop grew commonly on rocks and walls in the Near East and Egypt (v. 22). If it was the same plant that we identify as hyssop today, masses of tiny white flowers and a fragrant aroma characterized it. The Jews used it for applying blood to the door in the Passover ritual because of its availability and suitability as a liquid applicator. They also used it in the purification rite for lepers (Lev. 14:4, 6), the purification rite for a plague (Lev. 14:49-52), and for the red heifer sacrifice ritual (Num. 19:2-6).

"The hairy surface of its leaves and branches holds liquids well and makes it suitable as a sprinkling device for purification rituals."<sup>221</sup>

"The people were instructed that the only way they could avert the 'destroyer' was to put the blood of the lamb on their doorposts. Though the text does not explicitly state it, the overall argument of the Pentateuch . . . would suggest that their obedience to the word of the Lord in this instance was an evidence of their faith and trust in him [cf. Heb. 11:28]."<sup>222</sup>

God through Moses stressed the significance and the importance of perpetuating the Passover (v. 26).

"The Israelitish child will not unthinkingly practice a dead worship; he will ask: What does it mean? and the Israelitish father must not suppress the questions of the growing mind, but answer them, and thus begin the spiritualizing [the explanation of the spiritual significance] of the paschal rite."<sup>223</sup>

Worship and obedience occur together again here (vv. 27-28). These are the two proper responses to God's provision of redemption. They express true faith. These are key words in Exodus.

---

<sup>221</sup>Youngblood, p. 61.

<sup>222</sup>Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch . . .*, p. 263.

<sup>223</sup>J. P. Lange, "Exodus or the Second Book of Moses," in *Lange's Commentary on the Holy Scripture*, 1:2:39-40.

"The section closes with one of those rare notices in Israel's history: they did exactly what the Lord had commanded (v. 28)—and well they might after witnessing what had happened to the obstinate king and people of Egypt!"<sup>224</sup>

"By this act of obedience and faith, the people of Israel made it manifest that they had put their trust in Jehovah; and thus the act became their redemption."<sup>225</sup>

## **2. The death of the first-born and the release of Israel 12:29-36**

The angel struck the Egyptians at midnight, the symbolic hour of judgment (v. 29; cf. Matt. 25:5-6), when they were asleep ". . . to startle the king and his subjects out of their sleep of sin."<sup>226</sup> Pharaoh had originally met Moses' demands with contemptuous insult (5:4). Then he tried a series of compromises (8:25, 28; 10:8-11, 24). All of these maneuvers were unacceptable to God.

There is evidence from Egyptology that the man who succeeded Amenhotep II, the pharaoh of the plagues, was not his first-born son.<sup>227</sup> His successor was Thutmose IV (1425-1417 B.C.), a son of Amenhotep II but evidently not his first-born. Thutmose IV went to some pains to legitimize his right to the throne. This would not have been necessary if he had been the first-born. So far scholars have found no Egyptian records of the death of Amenhotep II's first-born son.

"Thutmose IV claimed that when he was still a prince he had a dream in which the sun god promised him the throne; this implies that he was not the one who would be expected to succeed to the throne under normal circumstances."<sup>228</sup>

Remember Joseph's dreams.

In contrast to the former plagues, this one was not just a heightened and supernaturally directed natural epidemic but a direct act of God Himself (cf. vv. 12, 13, 23, 27, 29). We need to understand "no home" in its context (v. 30). There was no Egyptian home in which there was a first-born son, who was not a father himself, that escaped God's judgment of physical death.

"This series of five imperative verbs [in v. 31], three meaning 'go' (*dlh* is used twice) and one meaning 'take,' coupled with five usages of the emphatic particle *mg* 'also' . . . , marvelously depicts a Pharaoh whose

---

<sup>224</sup>Kaiser, "Exodus," p. 376.

<sup>225</sup>Johnson, p. 62.

<sup>226</sup>Keil and Delitzsch, 2:23.

<sup>227</sup>See Unger, *Archaeology and . . .*, pp. 142-44; Gleason Archer, *A Survey of Old Testament Introduction*, p. 218; and Pritchard, p. 449.

<sup>228</sup>Gispén, p. 113.

reserve of pride is gone, who must do everything necessary to have done with Moses and Israel and the Yahweh who wants them for his own."<sup>229</sup>

Pharaoh's request that Moses would bless him is shocking since the Egyptians regarded Pharaoh as a god (v. 32; cf. Gen. 47:7).

The reader sees God in two roles in this section, representing the two parts of Israel's redemption. He appears as Judge satisfied by the blood of the innocent sin-bearer, and He is the Deliverer of Israel who liberated the nation from its slavery.

Redemption involves the payment of a price. What was the price of Israel's redemption? It was the lives of the lambs that God provided as the substitutes for Israel's first-born sons who would have died otherwise (cf. Isaac in Gen. 22, and Jesus Christ, the only-begotten of the Father). The first-born sons remained God's special portion (Num. 8:17-18). The Egyptian first-born sons died as a punishment on the Egyptians. The Egyptians had enslaved God's people and had not let them go, and they had executed male Israelite babies (1:15-22) possibly for the last 80 years.<sup>230</sup> God owns all life. He just leases it to His creatures. God paid the price of Israel's redemption to Himself. He purchased the nation to be a special treasure for Himself and for a special purpose (19:5).

### **3. The exodus of Israel out of Egypt 12:37-42**

12:37-39 The record of Israel's sojourn in the wilderness really begins here.

"Rameses" is probably the same city as "Raamses," also called Avaris (v. 37; cf. 1:11). It was the city from which the Israelites left Egypt, and it lay somewhere east of the Nile delta in the land of Goshen. Archaeologists have not identified Succoth certainly either. However from the context it seems that Succoth was only a few miles from Rameses. It may have been a district rather than a town.<sup>231</sup> Perhaps Cassuto was right when he wrote the following.

"Succoth was a border town named in Egyptian Tkw. Here the name appears in a Hebrew or Hebraized form. Apparently it was situated at the *tell* called by the Egyptians today Tell el-Maskhuta."<sup>232</sup>

Many commentators concluded that, since there were about 600,000 Israelite males, the total number of Israelites must have been about two million. Though the Hebrew word translated "thousand" (*eleph*) can also mean "family," "clan," "military unit," or something else, most translators have preferred "thousand" (cf. Exod. 38:26; Num. 1:45-47). In view of the

<sup>229</sup>Durham, p. 167.

<sup>230</sup>Ramm, p. 79.

<sup>231</sup>Edward Naville, *The Store-City of Pithom and the Route of the Exodus*, p. 23; Kaiser, "Exodus," p. 379.

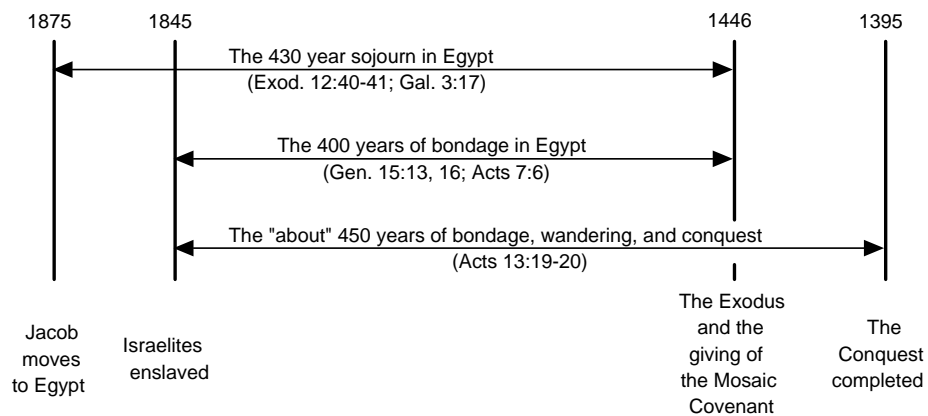
<sup>232</sup>Cassuto, 147.

incongruities posed by such a large number (cf. Exod. 13:17; 14:21-31; 16:3-4; 17:8-13; 18:14-16; 23:29-30; Num. 14; Deut. 7:7, 22; Josh. 7:5; et al.), *eleph* may have meant "hundred" or "unit of ten" or some other number smaller than "thousand," though the evidence to support this theory is presently weak, in my opinion.

Moses referred to the "mixed multitude" often in the account of the wilderness wanderings that follows. This group probably included Egyptian pagans and God-fearers (v. 38; cf. 9:20) and an assortment of other people including other enslaved Semites. For one reason or another these people took this opportunity to leave or escape from Egypt with the Israelites. This group proved to be a source of trouble in Israel and led the Israelites in complaining and opposing Moses (e.g., Num. 11:4).

12:40-42 The text is very clear that Israel was in Egypt 430 years "to the very day" (v. 41). This probably refers to the time between when Jacob entered Egypt with his family (1876 B.C.) to the day of the Exodus (1446 B.C.). Galatians 3:17 also refers to 430 years. This figure, however, probably represents the time from God's last reconfirmation of the Abrahamic covenant to Jacob at Beer-sheba (1875 B.C.; Gen. 46:2-4) to the giving of the Mosaic Law at Sinai (1446 B.C.; Exod. 19). Genesis 15:13, 16 and Acts 7:6 give the time of the Israelites' enslavement in Egypt as 400 years (1846-1446 B.C.). The "about 450 years" spoken of in Acts 13:19 includes the 400 year sojourn in Egypt, the 40 years of wilderness wanderings, and the seven year conquest of the land (1875-1395 B.C.).<sup>233</sup>

#### REFERENCES TO ISRAEL'S YEARS IN EGYPT



Scholars have debated hotly and still argue about the date of the Exodus. Many conservatives hold a date very close to 1446 B.C.<sup>234</sup> Their preference for this date rests

<sup>233</sup>Harold W. Hoehner, "The Duration of the Egyptian Bondage," *Bibliotheca Sacra* 126:504 (October-December 1969):306-16, presented three other ways to reconcile these references.

<sup>234</sup>See, for example, Wolf, pp. 141-48.

first on 1 Kings 6:1 that states that the Exodus took place 480 years before the fourth year of Solomon's reign. That year was quite certainly 967 B.C. Second, this view harmonizes with Judges 11:26 that says 300 years elapsed between Israel's entrance into Canaan and the commencement of Jephthah's rule as a judge.<sup>235</sup> Most liberals and many evangelicals hold to a date for the Exodus about 1290 B.C.<sup>236</sup> This opinion rests on the belief that the existence of the city of Raamses (1:11; et al.) presupposes the existence of Pharaoh Ramses II (ca. 1300-1234 B.C.).<sup>237</sup> Also followers of this view point to supposed similarities between the times of Pharaoh Ramses II and the Exodus period. Another view has also been popularized that places the Exodus about 1470 B.C.<sup>238</sup>

#### **4. Regulations regarding the Passover 12:43-51**

Before any male could eat the Passover he had to undergo circumcision. Moses stressed this requirement strongly in this section. The rationale behind this rule was that before anyone could observe the memorial of redemption he first had to exercise faith in the promises God had given to Abraham. Furthermore he had to demonstrate that faith by submitting to the rite of circumcision, the sign of the Abrahamic Covenant. This requirement should have reminded the Israelites and all other believers who partook of the Passover that the Passover rite did not make a person acceptable to God. Faith in the promises of God did that. Foreigners who were non-Israelites could and did become members of the nation by faith in the Abrahamic Covenant promises and participation in the rite of circumcision. There were both circumcised and uncircumcised foreigners who lived among the Israelites during the wilderness march.

Here Moses revealed the requirement that the Passover host was not to break a bone of the paschal lamb (v. 46; cf. vv. 3-9). Not a bone of the Lamb of God was broken either (John 19:36).

#### **5. The sanctification of the first-born 13:1-16**

This section is somewhat repetitive, but the emphasis is on the Lord's right to the first-born in Israel and how the Israelites were to acknowledge that right. The repetition stresses its importance.

---

<sup>235</sup>See Ronald Youngblood, "A New Look at an Old Problem: The Date of the Exodus," *Christianity Today* 26:20 (Dec. 17, 1982):58, 60; Charles Dyer, "The Date of the Exodus Reexamined," *Bibliotheca Sacra* 140:559 (July-September 1983):225-43; Archer, "Old Testament History . . .," pp. 106-9; and Bruce K. Waltke, "Palestinian Artifactual Evidence Supporting the Early Date of the Exodus," *Bibliotheca Sacra* 129:513 (January-March 1973):33-47.

<sup>236</sup>E.g., Kenneth Kitchen, *Ancient Orient and Old Testament*, pp. 73-75; Durham, p. xxvi; and James K. Hoffmeier, "What Is the Biblical Date for the Exodus? A Response to Bryant Wood," *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society* 50:2 (June 2007):225-47. For refutation of the late date theory, see Bryant G. Wood, "The Rise and Fall of the 13th-Century Exodus-Conquest Theory," *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society* 48:3 (September 2005):475-89; and idem, "The Biblical Date for the Exodus is 1446 BC: A Response to James Hoffmeier," *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society* 50:2 (June 2007):249-58.

<sup>237</sup>See my comments on 1:11 above.

<sup>238</sup>See John J. Bimson, *Redating the Exodus and the Conquest*; and idem, "Redating the Exodus," *Biblical Archaeology Review* 13:5 (September-October 1986):40-53, 66-68.

- 13:1-2 "Every" refers to the first-born males only (v. 2). This is clear from the Hebrew word used and the context (vv. 12, 13).
- 13:3-10 The Passover ("it," cf. v. 3) was to be a sign to the Israelites of God's powerful work for them.
- 13:11-16 The dedication of every first-born Israelite male baby was to take place after the nation had entered the Promised Land (vv. 5, 11-12). This was to be a memorial of God's redemption from Egyptian slavery, as were the feasts of Passover and Unleavened Bread (cf. 12:14). However, God took the Levites for His special possession in place of the first-born. This happened at Mt. Sinai (Num. 3:12-13). Consequently this dedication never took place, but the Israelites did circumcise their sons and observe the Passover when they first entered the Promised Land (Josh. 5:4-7).

God may or may not have intended that the Jews should literally wear the "phylacteries" (lit. frontlet-bands, or head-bands, v. 16; Heb. *tephilin*).

"The line of thought referred to merely expresses the idea, that the Israelites were not only to retain the commands of God in their hearts, and to confess them with the mouth, but to fulfil them with the hand, or in act and deed, and thus to show themselves in their whole bearing as the guardians and observers of the law. As the hand is the medium of action, and carrying in the hand represents handling, so the space between the eyes, or the forehead, is that part of the body which is generally visible, and what is worn there is worn to be seen. This figurative interpretation is confirmed and placed beyond doubt by such parallel passages as Prov. iii. 3, 'Bind them (the commandments) about thy neck; write them upon the tables of thine heart' (cf. vers. 21, 22, iv. 21, vi. 21, 22, vii. 3)."<sup>239</sup>

"For two thousand years and more, observant Jews have taken those passages literally. The paragraphs that form their contexts (Exod. 13:1-10; 13:11-16; Deut. 6:4-9; 11:13-21) are written on four strips of parchment and placed in two small leather boxes, one of which the pious Jewish man straps on his forehead and the other on his left arm before he says his morning prayers. The practice may have originated as early as the period following the exile to Babylon in 586 B.C.

"It hardly needs to be said that there is nothing inherently wrong with such a custom. The boxes, called 'phylacteries' are mentioned in Matthew 23:5, where Jesus criticizes a

---

<sup>239</sup>Keil and Delitzsch, 2:37.

certain group of Pharisees and teachers of the law for wearing them. Our Lord, however, condemns not the practice as such but the ostentatious use of 'wide' phylacteries as part of a general statement about those who flaunt their religiosity in public: 'Everything they do is done for men to see.'

"But although the proper and modest use of phylacteries might be spiritually legitimate, it is probably best to understand the references from Exodus and Deuteronomy as figures of speech, since similar statements are found elsewhere in the Old Testament."<sup>240</sup>

#### **D. GOD'S COMPLETION OF ISRAEL'S LIBERATION 13:17—15:21**

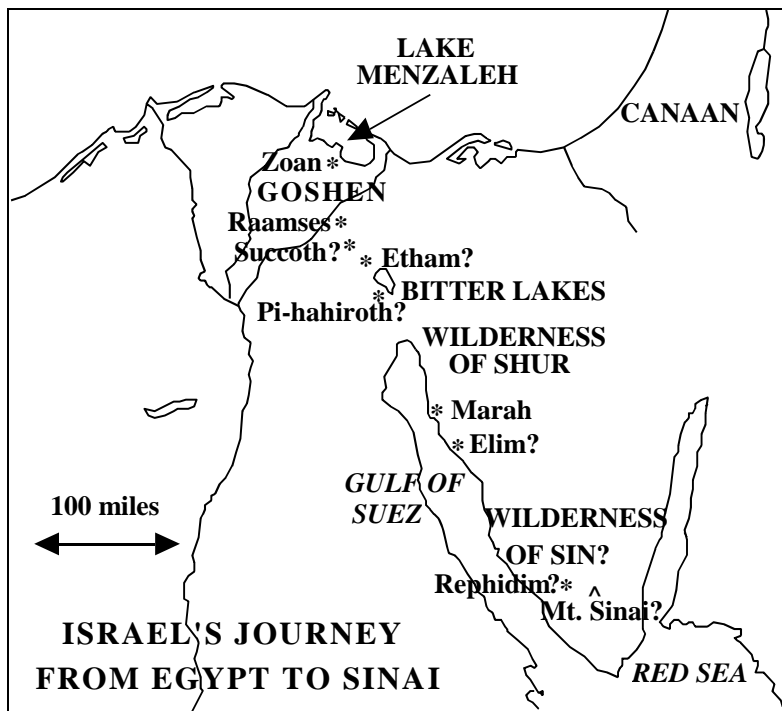
The Israelites now began their migration from Goshen to Canaan.

##### **1. The journey from Succoth to Etham 13:17-22**

"The way of the land of the Philistines" refers to the most northern of three routes travelers took from Egypt to Canaan (v. 17). The others lay farther south. The Egyptians had heavily fortified this caravan route, also called the *Via Maris* (the way of the sea). The Egyptians would have engaged Israel in battle had the chosen people gone that way.

The people marched in an orderly fashion (v. 18). This is the meaning of "martial array." Moses had not yet organized them as an army.

Succoth was evidently north and west of the Bitter Lakes (v. 20). Today the Suez Canal connects the Red Sea with the Mediterranean by way of the Bitter Lakes. Archaeologists have not yet identified certainly the sites referred to here such as Succoth and Etham, as well as many of those mentioned in the records of the Israelites' journey (e.g., Num. 33). Consequently it is virtually impossible to pin down their exact locations. Many of these sites were nothing



<sup>240</sup>Youngblood, pp. 66-67.

more than stopping points or oases; they were not established towns. Kaiser wrote concerning their locations, "Everyone is guessing!"<sup>241</sup> The only stopping-place in the wilderness wanderings that scholars have been able to identify without dispute is Kadesh Barnea.

The wilderness referred to in this verse would have been the wilderness of Shur located to the east of the Nile delta.

There was only one cloudy pillar (v. 21; cf. 14:24). Sailhamer believed there was one pillar of cloud and another pillar of fire, but this is a rare view.<sup>242</sup>

"Like the burning bush (3:2), the pillar was the visible symbol of God's presence among His people. The Lord Himself was in the pillar (13:21; 14:24) and often spoke to the people from it ([chs. 19—20;] Num. 12:5-6; Deut. 31:15-16; Ps. 99:6-7). The later hymn-writers of Israel fondly remembered it (Pss. 78:14; 105:39). A similar cloud of smoke came to represent the glory of the Lord in the sanctuary throughout much of Israel's history (Exod. 40:34-35; 1 Kings 8:10-11; Isa. 4:5; 6:3-4)."<sup>243</sup>

The pillar of cloud and fire remained over the Israelites until they entered Canaan under Joshua's leadership (v. 22). Perhaps it appeared as Meyer imagined it.

"When the excessive heat made it necessary for Israel to march at night, the light of the Fiery Pillar was enough to light the way: and when in the day the scorching glare of the sun was blinding, the cloud spread itself abroad like a great umbrella, so that the women and children could travel in comparative comfort [cf. Ps. 84:11]."<sup>244</sup>

## **2. Israel's passage through the Red Sea ch. 14**

14:1-4      Scholars have not been able to locate definitely the sites referred to in verse 2.

"An Egyptian papyrus associates Baal Zephon with Tahpahnés . . . a known site near Lake Menzaleh in the northeastern delta region."<sup>245</sup>

However, it seems that the crossing took place farther south in view of the implication that it took the Israelites no less and no more than three days to reach Marah (15:22-23). The evidence for the location of Marah seems a bit stronger.

---

<sup>241</sup>Kaiser, "Exodus," p. 385.

<sup>242</sup>Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch . . .*, p. 269.

<sup>243</sup>Youngblood, pp. 74-75. See also Richard D. Patterson, "The Imagery of Clouds in the Scriptures," *Bibliotheca Sacra* 165:657 (January-March 2008):24-25.

<sup>244</sup>Meyer, p. 158.

<sup>245</sup>Youngblood, p. 75.

"Yahweh's first intention was to give the appearance that Israel, fearful of the main road, then fearful of the wilderness, was starting first one way and then another, not knowing where to turn and so a ready prey for recapture or destruction. Yahweh's second intention was to lure the Egyptians into a trap, first by making Pharaoh's mind obstinate once again, and then by defeating Pharaoh and his forces, who were certain to come down in vengeance upon an apparently helpless and muddled Israel."<sup>246</sup>

The Hebrew phrase *yam sup* that Moses used to describe the body of water through which the Israelites passed miraculously means "Red Sea," not "Reed Sea."

"If there is anything that sophisticated students of the Bible *know*, it is that *yam sup*, although traditionally translated Red Sea, really means Reed Sea, and that it was in fact the Reed Sea that the Israelites crossed on their way out of Egypt.

"Well it doesn't and it wasn't and they're wrong!"<sup>247</sup>

In the article quoted above, the writer explained that the word *sup* did not originate in the Egyptian language but in Hebrew. Many scholars have claimed it came from an Egyptian root word meaning "reed." He showed that it came from a Hebrew root word meaning "end." *Yam* is also a Hebrew word that means "sea." The *yam sup* is then the sea at the end. The ancients used the name *yam sup* to describe the body of water that lay beyond the farthest lands known to them. It meant the sea at the end of the world. It clearly refers to the Red Sea often in the Old Testament (Exod. 15:4; Num. 21:4; 33:8; Josh. 2:10; 4:23; 1 Kings 9:26; Jer. 49:21; et al.). The Greeks later used the same term, translated into Greek, to refer to the Persian Gulf and the Indian Ocean. The translation of *yam sup* as Reed Sea is evidently both inaccurate and misleading. It implies that the Israelites simply crossed some shallow marsh when they left Egypt. Such an interpretation lacks support in the inspired record of Israel's Exodus.<sup>248</sup>

"The Hebrew word *sup*, which corresponds closely to the Egyptian *tjuf* ('papyrus'), refers to the reeds along the bank of the Nile in Exodus 2:3 and to the seaweed in the Mediterranean in Jonah 2:5 [HB 2:6]. Since there are a series of lakes with abundant supplies of reeds and papyrus north of the Red Sea (the Gulf of Suez)—such as Lake

---

<sup>246</sup>Durham, p. 187.

<sup>247</sup>Batto, p. 57.

<sup>248</sup>For a summary of views on the site of crossing, see Davis, pp. 168-71, or Hyatt, pp. 156-61.

Manzaleh and Lake Timsah—it is felt that one of these may have been the 'Reed Sea' crossed by the Israelites."<sup>249</sup>

Moses recorded that God hardened Pharaoh's heart three times in this chapter (vv. 4, 8, 17).

14:5-14 This is the first of Israel's many complaints against Moses and Yahweh that Moses recorded in Scripture. It is the first of ten that culminated in God's judgment of them at Kadesh Barnea (v. 11; Num. 14:22-23).

"This is the first example in the Old Testament of what some scholars call 'holy war' or 'Yahweh war.' That is, this war was undertaken by the Lord in defense of His own reputation, promises, and self-interest (14:10-14; see also, for example, 15:3; Deut. 1:30; 3:22; 20:4). It is to be distinguished from 'ordinary' war that Israel might undertake on her own (Num. 14:39-45)."<sup>250</sup>

14:15-25 The strong east wind that God sent (v. 21) recalls the wind from God that swept over the face of the primeval waters in creation (Gen. 1:2). The cloud became a source of light to the fleeing Israelites but darkness to the pursuing Egyptians (vv. 19-20).

"Thus the double nature of the glory of God in salvation and judgment, which later appears so frequently in Scripture, could not have been more graphically depicted."<sup>251</sup>

The angel switched from guiding to guarding the Israelites. The strong east wind was another miracle like those that produced the plagues (v. 21; cf. Ps. 77:16-19).

The two million Israelites could have passed through the sea in the time the text says if they crossed in a wide column, perhaps a half-mile wide (v. 22). Some interpreters take the wall of water literally and others interpret it figuratively.

"The metaphor [water like a wall] is no more to be taken literally than when Ezra 9:9 says that God has given him a 'wall' (the same word) in Israel. It is a poetic metaphor to explain why the Egyptian chariots could not sweep in to right and left, and cut Israel off; they had to cross by the same ford, directly behind the Israelites."<sup>252</sup>

<sup>249</sup>Wolf, p. 140. See also *The New Bible Dictionary*, 1962, s.v. "Red Sea," by Kenneth A. Kitchen.

<sup>250</sup>Merrill, in *The Old . . .*, p. 54.

<sup>251</sup>Kaiser, "Exodus," p. 389.

<sup>252</sup>Cole, p. 121. Cf. Cassuto, pp. 167-69.

Nevertheless nothing in the text precludes a literal wall of water.<sup>253</sup> This seems to be the normal meaning of the text.

The text does not say that Pharaoh personally perished in the Red Sea (cf. vv. 8, 10, 28; Ps. 106:7-12; 136:13-15).<sup>254</sup>

14:26-31 This miraculous deliverance produced fear (reverential trust) in Yahweh among the Israelites (v. 31). Their confidence in Moses as well as in God revived (cf. v. 10-12).

". . . whenever confidence in Moses increases, as here and at Sinai, it is because of an action of Yahweh."<sup>255</sup>

"In view of the importance of the concept of faith and trust in God for the writer of the Pentateuch, we should take a long look at these verses. Just as Abraham believed God and was counted righteous (Ge 15:6), so the Israelites, under the leadership of Moses, also believed God. It seems reasonable that the writer would have us conclude here in the wilderness the people of God were living a righteous life of faith, like Abraham. As they headed toward Sinai, their trust was in the God of Abraham who had done great deeds for them. It is only natural, and certainly in line with the argument of the book, that they would break out into a song of praise in the next chapter. On the negative side, however, we should not lose sight of the fact that these same people would forget only too quickly the great work of God, make a golden calf (Ps 106:11-13), and thus forsake the God about whom they were now singing."<sup>256</sup>

"Here [v. 31] the title of 'servant' is given to Moses. This is the highest title a mortal can have in the OT—the 'servant of Yahweh.' It signifies more than a believer; it describes the individual as acting on behalf of God. For example, when Moses stretched out his hand, God used it as his own (Isa 63:12). Moses was God's personal representative."<sup>257</sup>

Many critics who have sought to explain away God's supernatural deliverance of Israel have attacked this story. They have tried by various explanations to account for what happened in natural terms exclusively. It is obvious from this chapter, however, that regardless of where the crossing took place enough water was present to drown the army

<sup>253</sup>Davis, pp. 163-68, listed several ways of understanding what happened.

<sup>254</sup>Cole, p. 120. Cf. Jack Finegan, *Let My People Go*, p. 87; and Oliver Blosser, "Did the Pharaoh of the Exodus Drown in the Red Sea?" *It's About Time*, (July 1987):11.

<sup>255</sup>Durham, p. 197.

<sup>256</sup>Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch . . .*, p. 270.

<sup>257</sup>The NET Bible note on 14:31.

of Egyptians that pursued Israel (v. 28). Immediately after this deliverance, the Israelites regarded their salvation as supernatural (15:1-21), and they continued to do so for generations (e.g., Ps. 106:7-8). The people of Canaan heard about and believed in this miraculous deliverance, and it terrified them (Josh. 2:9-10; 9:9). The critic's problem may be moral rather than intellectual. Some of the critics do not want to deal with the implications of there being supernatural phenomena so they try to explain them away. The text clearly presents a supernatural deliverance and even states that God acted as He did to prove His supernatural power (vv. 4, 18).

"From the start of the exodus, it becomes clear, Yahweh has orchestrated the entire sequence."<sup>258</sup>

The Lord finished the Israelites' liberation when He destroyed the Egyptian army. The Israelites' slavery ended when they left Egypt, but they began to experience true freedom after they crossed the Red Sea. The ten plagues had broken Pharaoh's hold on the Israelites, but the Red Sea deliverance removed them from his reach forever. God redeemed Israel on the Passover night, but He liberated Israel from slavery finally at the Red Sea.<sup>259</sup> In Christian experience these two works of God, redemption and liberation, occur at the same time; they are two aspects of salvation.

### **3. Israel's song of deliverance 15:1-21**

"The song is composed of three gradually increasing strophes, each of which commences with the praise of Jehovah, and ends with a description of the overthrow of the Egyptian host (vv. 2-5, 6-10, 11-18). The theme announced in the introduction in v. 1 is thus treated in three different ways; and whilst the omnipotence of God, displayed in the destruction of the enemy, is the prominent topic in the first two strophes, the third depicts with prophetic confidence the fruit of this glorious event in the establishment of Israel, as a kingdom of Jehovah, in the promised inheritance."<sup>260</sup>

Cassuto divided the strophes better, I believe, as vv. 1-6, vv. 7-11, and vv. 12-16, with an epilogue in vv. 17-18.<sup>261</sup> Kaiser proposed a similar division: 1b-5, 6-10, 11-16a, and 16b-18.<sup>262</sup>

"It is not comparable to any one psalm, or song or hymn, or liturgy known to us anywhere else in the OT or in ANE [ancient Near Eastern] literature."<sup>263</sup>

---

<sup>258</sup>Durham, p. 198.

<sup>259</sup>See William D. Ramey, "The Great Escape (Exodus 14)," *Exegesis and Exposition* 1:1 (Fall 1986):33-42.

<sup>260</sup>Keil and Delitzsch, 2:50.

<sup>261</sup>Cassuto, 173. See also Jasper J. Burden, "A Stylistic Analysis of Exodus 15:1-21: Theory and Practice," *OTWSA* 29 (1986):34-70.

<sup>262</sup>Kaiser, "Exodus," p. 393-96.

<sup>263</sup>Durham, p. 203.

"Yahweh is both the subject and the object of this psalm; the hymn is about him and to him, both here and in the similar usage of Judg 5:3 . . ." <sup>264</sup>

It is interesting that Moses described the Egyptian pursuers as being thrown into the sea (v. 4) and sinking like a stone (v. 5) and lead (v. 10). The same image describes Pharaoh's earlier order to throw the Hebrew babies into the Nile River (1:22). God did to the Egyptians what they had done to the Israelites.<sup>265</sup>

This hymn is a fitting climax to all God's miracles on behalf of the Israelites in leading them out of Egypt.<sup>266</sup> It is a song of praise that focuses on God Himself and attributes to Him the superiority over all other gods that He had demonstrated (cf. v. 11). Undoubtedly the Israelites sang this inspired song many times during their wilderness wanderings and for generations from then on.<sup>267</sup> The first part of the song (vv. 1-12) looks back on God's destruction of the Egyptian soldiers, and the second part (vv. 13-18) predicts Israel's entrance into the Promised Land. The divine name appears ten times.

"The event at the Red Sea, when the Egyptian army was drowned, was celebrated as a great military victory achieved by God (Exodus 15:1-12). It was that event, wherein a new dimension of the nature of God was discovered by the Hebrews (the new understanding is expressed forcefully by the explanation 'the Lord is a man in battle' [v. 3]), that opened to their understanding the real possibility, if not necessity, of taking possession of the promised land by means of military conquest (Exodus 15:13-18)."<sup>268</sup>

"The Exodus was one of the foundational events of Israel's religion. It marked the liberation from Egyptian slavery, which in turn made possible the formation of a relationship of covenant between Israel and God. And nowhere is the Exodus given more powerful expression than in the Song of the Sea (Exodus 15:1-18), a great victory hymn celebrating God's triumph over Egypt at the sea. To this day, the ancient hymn continues to be employed in the synagogue worship of Judaism. Its continued use reflects the centrality of its theme, that of God's control over the forces of both nature and history in the redemption of his people.

"When one reads the Song of the Sea, one immediately gains an impression of the joy and exhilaration expressed by those who first used its words in worship. But what is not immediately evident to the modern reader is the subtle manner in which the poet has given force to his themes by the adaptation of Canaanite mythology. Underlying the words and structure of the Hebrew hymn are the motifs of the central mythology of

<sup>264</sup>Ibid., p. 205.

<sup>265</sup>Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch* . . . , p. 271.

<sup>266</sup>See Richard D. Patterson, "Victory at Sea: Prose and Poetry in Exodus 14—15," *Bibliotheca Sacra* 161:641 (January-March 2004):42-54.

<sup>267</sup>See Jeffrey E. MacLurg, "An Ode to Joy: The Song of the Sea (Exodus 15:1-21)," *Exegesis and Exposition* 1:1 (Fall 1986):43-54.

<sup>268</sup>Peter Craigie, *The Problem of War in the Old Testament*, p. 67.

Baal; only when one understands the fashion in which that mythology has been transformed can one go on to perceive the extraordinary significance which the poet attributed to the Exodus from Egypt.

"The poet has applied some of the most central motifs of the myth of Baal. These motifs may be summarized in certain key terms: conflict, order, kingship, and palace-construction. Taking the cycle of Baal texts as a whole (see further Chapter IV), the narrative begins with conflict between Baal and Yamm ('Sea'); Baal, representing order, is threatened by the chaotic Yamm. Baal's conquest of Yamm marks one of the steps in the process of creation; order is established, and chaos is subdued. Baal's victory over Yamm is also the key to his kingship, and to symbolize the order and consolidate the kingship, Baal initiates the construction of his palace. And then, in the course of the myth, conflict breaks out again, this time between Baal and Mot. Baal is eventually victorious in this conflict, establishing once again his kingship and the rule of order. It is important to note not only the centrality of these motifs in the Baal myth, but also their significance; the motifs as a whole establish a cosmological framework within which to interpret the Baal myth. It is, above all, a cosmology, developing the origins and permanent establishment of order in the world, as understood and believed by the Canaanites. Its central celebration is that of creation.

"In the Song of the Sea, the poet has developed the same central motifs in the structure of his song. The song begins with conflict between God and Egypt (Exodus 15:1-12), but the way in which the poet has transformed the ancient motifs is instructive. 'Sea' is no longer the adversary of order, but God uses the sea (Hebrew *yam*) as an instrument in the conquest of chaos. After the conquest, God is victorious and establishes order; his kingship is proclaimed in a statement of his incomparability (verse 11). But then the theme of conflict is resumed again, as future enemies are anticipated (verses 14-16). They, too, would be conquered, and eventually God's palace and throne would be established as a symbol of the order achieved in his victory (verse 17). Finally, God's kingship would be openly declared, as a consequence of his victories: 'the Lord shall reign for ever and ever' (verse 18). The Hebrew expression for this statement of kingship is *yhwh ymlk*, directly analogous to the celebration of Baal's kingship in the Ugaritic texts: *b'l ymlk*.

"It is one thing to trace the motifs of the Baal myth in the Song of the Sea; it is another to grasp their significance. The primary significance lies in the cosmological meaning of the motifs; the Hebrew poet has taken the symbolic language of creation and adapted it to give expression to his understanding of the meaning of the Exodus. At one level, the Exodus was simply the escape of Hebrews from Egyptian slavery; at another level, it marked a new act of divine creation. Just as Genesis 1 celebrates the creation of the world, so too Exodus 15 celebrates the creation of a new

people, Israel. And when one perceives this underlying significance of the poetic language employed in the Song of the Sea, one is then in a position to understand better another portion of the biblical text, namely, the reasons given for the observation of the sabbath day."<sup>269</sup>

"Throughout the poem, however, the picture of God's great deeds foreshadows most closely that of David, who defeated the chiefs of Edom, Philistia, and Canaan and made Mount Zion the eternal home for the Lord's sanctuary (v. 17)."<sup>270</sup>

"The poem of Exod 15 celebrates Yahweh present *with* his people and doing *for* them as no other god anywhere and at any time *can* be present to do. As such, it is a kind of summary of the theological base of the whole of the Book of Exodus."<sup>271</sup>

Worship was the result of redemption. The people looked back at their deliverance and forward to God's Promised Land. At this point their joy was due to their freedom from slavery. However the desert lay ahead. The family of Abraham had become a nation, and God was dwelling among them in the cloud. God's presence with the nation introduced the need for holiness in Israel. The emphasis on holiness begins with God's dwelling among His people in the cloud. It increased when God descended on the tabernacle and ark of the covenant.

The parallel that exists between Abraham's experiences and Israel's is also significant. God first called Abram out of pagan Ur. Then He blessed him with a covenant after the patriarch obeyed God and went where Yahweh led him. God did the same thing with Israel. This similarity suggests that God's dealings with both Abram and Israel may be programmatic and indicative of His method of dealing with His elect generally.

## **II. THE ADOPTION OF ISRAEL 15:22—40:38**

The second major section of Exodus records the events associated with God's adoption of Israel as His chosen people. Having redeemed Israel out of slavery in Egypt He now made the nation His privileged son. Redemption is the end of one journey but the beginning of another.

### **A. GOD'S PREPARATORY INSTRUCTION OF ISRAEL 15:22—18:27**

The events in this section of the text record God's preparation of His people for the revelation of His gracious will for them at Mt. Sinai.

---

<sup>269</sup>Idem, *Ugarit and the Old Testament*, pp. 88-89. See also Frank M. Cross Jr., "The Song of the Sea and Canaanite Myth," in *God and Christ: Existence and Province*, pp. 1-25.

<sup>270</sup>Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch . . .*, p. 272.

<sup>271</sup>Durham, p. 210.

### **1. Events in the wilderness of Shur 15:22-27**

15:22-26 The wilderness of Shur was a section of semi-desert to the east of Egypt's border. It occupied the northwestern part of the Sinai Peninsula, and it separated Egypt from Palestine (v. 22).

" . . . wilderness does not imply a waste of sand, but a broad open expanse, which affords pasture enough for a nomad tribe wandering with their flocks. Waste and desolate so far as human habitations are concerned, the traveller [*sic*] will only encounter a few Bedouins. But everywhere the earth is clothed with a thin vegetation, scorched in summer drought, but brightening up, as at the kiss of the Creator, into fair and beautiful pastures, at the rainy season and in the neighbourhood of a spring."<sup>272</sup>

This area has not changed much over the years.

Moses had asked Pharaoh's permission for the Israelites to go a three-day journey into the wilderness (3:18; 5:3; 8:27), but now, having gone three days, the people found no water suitable for drinking. The water at the oasis later called Marah was brackish (vv. 23-24). This condition made the people complain again (cf. 14:11-12). In three days they had forgotten God's miracles at the Red Sea, much less the plagues. This should prove that miracles do not result in great faith. Rather great faith comes from a settled conviction that God is trustworthy.

"When the supply fails, our faith is soon gone."<sup>273</sup>

". . . we may in our journey have reached the pools that promised us satisfaction, only to find them brackish. That marriage, that friendship, that new home, that partnership, that fresh avenue of pleasure, which promised so well turns out to be absolutely disappointing. Who has not muttered 'Marah' over some desert well which he strained every nerve to reach, but when reached, it disappointed him!"<sup>274</sup>

Some commentators have seen the tree cast into the water as a type of the cross of Christ or Christ Himself that, applied to the bitter experiences of life, makes them sweet. What is definitely clear is that by using God's specified means and obeying His word the Israelites learned that God would heal them (v. 25). Throwing the wood into the water did not magically change it. This was a symbolic act, similar to Moses lifting his staff over the sea (14:16). God changed the water. He is able to turn bitter water into sweet water for His people.

---

<sup>272</sup>Meyer, p. 178.

<sup>273</sup>Martin Luther, quoted by Keil and Delitzsch, 2:58.

<sup>274</sup>Meyer, p. 181.

The "statute and regulation" that God made for Israel were that He would deliver them from all their troubles. Therefore they could always count on His help. God's test involved seeing whether they would rely on Him or not (cf. James 1).

The words of God in verse 26 explain the statute and regulation just given. The Israelites would not suffer the diseases God had sent on the Egyptians (i.e., experience His discipline) if they obeyed His word as they had just done. They had just cast the tree into the pool.

God was teaching His people that He was responsible for their physical as well as their spiritual wellbeing. While doctors diagnose and prescribe, only God can heal.<sup>275</sup>

"We do not find Him [God] giving Himself a new name at Elim, but at Marah. The happy experiences of life fail to reveal all the new truth and blessing that await us in God [cf. Gen. 15:1; Exod. 17:15]."<sup>276</sup>

This is one of the verses in Scripture that advocates of the "prosperity gospel" like. They use it to prove their contention that it is never God's will for anyone to be sick (along with 23:25; Ps. 103:3; Prov. 4:20-22; Isa. 33:24; Jer. 30:17; Matt. 4:23; 10:1; Mark 16:16-18; Luke 6:17-19; Acts 5:16 and 10:38). One advocate of this position wrote as follows.

"Don't ever tell anyone sickness is the will of God for us. It isn't! Healing and health are the will of God for mankind. If sickness were the will of God, heaven would be filled with sickness and disease."<sup>277</sup>

15:27      At Elim Israel learned something else about God. Not only would He deliver them (v. 3) and heal them (v. 26), but He would also provide refreshing drink and nourishing food for them as their Shepherd (cf. Ps. 23:2).

A method of God's dealing with the Israelites as His people that He frequently employed stands out clearly in these incidents. God did not lead the Israelites around every difficulty. Instead He led them into many difficulties, but He also provided deliverance for them in their difficulties. This caused the Israelites to learn to look to Him for the supply of their needs. He still deals with His children the same way.<sup>278</sup>

---

<sup>275</sup>See Jay D. Fawver and R. Larry Overstreet, "Moses and Preventive Medicine," *Bibliotheca Sacra* 147:587 (July-September):285.

<sup>276</sup>Meyer, pp. 183-84.

<sup>277</sup>Kenneth Hagin, *Redeemed from Poverty, Sickness and Death*, p. 16. For a critique of this view, see Ken L. Sarles, "A Theological Evaluation of the Prosperity Gospel," *Bibliotheca Sacra* 143:572 (October-December 1986):329-52.

<sup>278</sup>See Allen P. Ross, "When God Gives His People Bitter Water (Exodus 15:22-27)," *Exegesis and Exposition* 1:1 (Fall 1986):55-66.

## **2. Quails and manna in the wilderness of Sin ch. 16**

This chapter records another crisis in the experience of the Israelites as they journeyed from Goshen to Mt. Sinai that God permitted and used to teach them important lessons.

16:1-3        The wilderness of Sin evidently lay in the southwestern part of the Sinai peninsula (v. 1). Its name relates to Sinai, the name of the mountain range located on its eastern edge. Aharoni believed that Paran was the original name of the entire Sinai Peninsula.<sup>279</sup>

This was Israel's third occasion of grumbling (v. 2; cf. 14:11-12; 15:24). The reason this time was not fear of the Egyptian army or lack of water but lack of food (v. 3).

"A pattern is thus established here that continues throughout the narratives of Israel's sojourn in the wilderness. As the people's trust in the Lord and in Moses waned in the wilderness, the need grew for stricter lessons."<sup>280</sup>

16:4-12        The manifestation of God's glory was His regular provision of manna that began the next day and continued for 40 years (v. 7). The glory of the Lord here was the evidence of His presence in the cloudy pillar (v. 10). This was probably a flash of light and possibly thunder, both of which later emanated from the cloud over Mt. Sinai (cf. 19:18).

16:13-21        "These [quail still] fly in such dense masses that the Arab boys often kill two or three at a time, by merely striking at them with a stick as they fly. . . . But in spring the quails also come northwards in immense masses from the interior of Africa, and return in autumn, when they sometimes arrive so exhausted, that they can be caught with the hand. . . ."<sup>281</sup>

Egyptian art pictures people catching the birds in hand nets.<sup>282</sup>

The Hebrew word *man*, translated into Greek *manna* and transliterated from Greek into the English word "manna," is an interrogative particle that means "What?" The Greek word *manna* means "grain" or "bread." From this has come the idea that the manna was similar to bread. An omer is about two quarts dry measure (v. 16).

---

<sup>279</sup>Y. Aharoni, "Kadesh-Barnea and Mount Sinai," in *God's Wilderness: Discoveries in Sinai*, pp. 165-70.

<sup>280</sup>Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch . . .*, p. 273.

<sup>281</sup>Keil and Delitzsch, 2:66-67.

<sup>282</sup>Hannah, p. 134.

Jesus Christ compared Himself to the manna (John 6:33, 47-51, 53-58). It is a type (a divinely intended illustration) of Christ. Our Lord gave Himself unreservedly, but each Christian has no more of Him experientially than we appropriate by faith. Manna also represents Christ in His humiliation giving His flesh so we might have life (John 6:49-51). To meditate on Him is to feed on the true manna (John 6:38-40).

Students of Exodus have explained verse 18 in various ways. Some old Jewish commentators said it describes what happened when each family had finished collecting the manna and had gathered in their tent to pool their individual amounts. Then they discovered that they had collected just the right quantity for their needs. Some Christian commentators have suggested that the Israelites gathered all the manna each day in one central place and from there each family took as needed. There was always enough for everyone. The former explanation seems to fit the context better.

16:22-30 The Israelites had not observed the Sabbath or a day of rest until now (v. 23). This is probably one reason they did not immediately observe it faithfully as a special day. As slaves in Egypt they probably worked seven days a week. However, God was blessing them with a day of rest and preparing them for the giving of the fourth commandment (20:8-11). This is the first reference to the Sabbath as such in Scripture.

16:31-36 Evangelical commentators generally have felt that the manna was a substance unique from any other edible food (v. 31). Some interpreters believe it was the sap-like secretion of the tamarisk tree or the secretion of certain insects common in the desert.<sup>283</sup> In the latter case the miracle would have been the timing with which God provided it and the abundance of it. Normally this sap only flows in the summer months. If this is the explanation, it was a miracle similar to the plagues, not totally unknown phenomena but divinely scheduled and reinforced. Even though there are similarities between these secretions and the manna, the differences are more numerous and point to a unique provision.<sup>284</sup>

The "testimony" was the tables of the Mosaic Law that Aaron later kept in the ark of the covenant (cf. 25:16). Moses told Aaron to preserve a pot of manna before the Lord's presence (vv. 33-34; cf. Num. 17:10-11).<sup>285</sup> These physical objects memorialized God's faithful provision of both spiritual and physical foods (cf. Deut. 8:3).

The Israelites were not completely separate from other people during their years in the wilderness. As they traveled the caravan routes they would meet travelers and settlements

<sup>283</sup>E.g., F. S. Bodenheimer, "The Manna of Sinai," *Biblical Archaeologist* 10:1 (February 1947):2-6.

<sup>284</sup>Cf. Ellison, pp. 89-90; and Davis, pp. 181-83.

<sup>285</sup>See Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch . . .*, pp. 274-75.

of tribes from time to time. They evidently traded with these people (cf. Deut. 2:6-7). Consequently their total diet was not just manna, milk, and a little meat, though manna was one of their staple commodities.<sup>286</sup>

God sought to impress major lessons on His people through the events recorded in this chapter. These included His ability and willingness to provide regularly for their daily needs and His desire that they experience His blessing. He gave them Sabbath rest to refresh and strengthen their spirits as well as ample, palatable food for their bodies: manna in the mornings and quail in the evenings.

### **3. The lack of water at Rephidim 17:1-7**

Again the Israelites complained because there was no water to drink when they camped at Rephidim (cf. 15:24). At Marah there was bad water, but now there was none.

". . . the supreme calamity of desert travellers [*sic*] befell them—complete lack of water."<sup>287</sup>

Rephidim was near the wilderness of Sinai (v. 1; cf. 19:2; Num. 33:15) and the Horeb (Sinai) range of mountains (v. 6).

The Israelites' grumbling demonstrated lack of faith, since God had promised to supply their needs (v. 2). They wanted Him to act as they dictated rather than waiting for Him to provide as He had promised. This was how they tested or challenged the Lord (cf. 1 Cor. 10:10). It was proper for God to test them (15:25; 16:4), but it was improper for them to test Him in the sense of trying His patience.

"One of Moses' most characteristic and praiseworthy traits was that he took his difficulties to the Lord (v. 4; 15:25; 32:30; 33:8; Num 11:2, 11; 12:13; 14:13-19 et al.)."<sup>288</sup>

By using his staff (v. 5) Moses proved that God was still enabling him to perform miracles as he had done in Egypt. He still had divine regal authority, and the power of God was still with him. The elders apparently accompanied Moses as representatives of the people since the whole nation could not get close enough to witness the miracle.

Horeb may refer to the mountain range at the southern tip of the Sinai Peninsula (v. 6; cf. Deut. 1:2; 1 Kings 19:8) also called Sinai. This is the traditional site, but I question it (cf. Deut. 33:2; Gal. 4:25). Wherever the Horeb range may have been, Moses struck the rock somewhere near these mountains.<sup>289</sup>

"Massah" means "testing" or "proof," and "Meribah" means "murmuring," "dissatisfaction," or "contention" (v. 7). Except for Joshua 9:18 and Psalm 59:15, all the

<sup>286</sup>See Itzhaq Beit-Arieh, "Fifteen Years in Sinai," *Biblical Archaeology Review* 10:4 (July-August 1984):28-54.

<sup>287</sup>Cassuto, p. 201.

<sup>288</sup>Kaiser, "Exodus," p. 406.

<sup>289</sup>See Aviram Perevolotsky and Israel Finkelstein, "The Southern Sinai Exodus Route in Ecological Perspective," *Biblical Archaeology Review* 11:4 (July-August 1985):26-41.

other references to grumbling in the Old Testament occur in six chapters of the Pentateuch: Exodus 15, 16, 17, and Numbers 14, 16, and 17.<sup>290</sup> The first name commemorated the Israelites' testing of God and the second name their quarreling with Moses. They failed to believe that the Lord was among them as He had promised He would be.

"In our own time the same demand is made, the same challenge repeated. Men are not satisfied with the moral evidences of the Being and providence of God, they point to the physical evils around, the hunger and thirst, the poverty and misery, the pollution and self-will of our times, crying—If there be a God, why does He permit these things? Why does He allow suffering and sorrow? Why does He not interpose? And then, when the heavens are still silent, they infer that there is no God, that the sky is an empty eye-socket, and that there is nothing better than to eat and drink, because death is an eternal sleep."<sup>291</sup>

God had assured the Israelites in Egypt that He would bring them into the Promised Land (3:8, 17; 13:5, 11). Consequently all their grumbling demonstrated a lack of faith. This second instance of complaining about lack of water was more serious than the first because God had provided good water for them earlier in the desert (15:25).

#### **4. The hostility of the Amalekites 17:8-16**

Whereas the Israelites had feared the possibility of having to battle the Egyptians (14:10), they now did engage in battle with the Amalekites.

"The primary function of this section in its present location is the demonstration of yet another proof and benefit of Yahweh's Presence with Israel. The occasion for the demonstration this time is an attack from the outside instead of an internal complaint. The result, however, is once again an undeniable supernatural intervention of Yahweh. . . . Yahweh is present, when the need arises, to fight alongside and even on behalf of his people."<sup>292</sup>

17:8-13      Moses used "Amalek" to represent the Amalekites, as he often used "Israel" for the Israelites (v. 8). The Amalekites were a tribe of Semites. They had descended from one of Esau's grandsons (Gen. 36:12) and had settled in the part of Sinai the Israelites now occupied. They also inhabited an area in southern Canaan (cf. Gen. 14:7). They evidently opposed Israel in battle because they felt Israel was a threat to their security.

This is the first biblical reference to Joshua (v. 9). Moses selected him to lead Israel's warriors. Moses' staff was the means God used to accomplish

---

<sup>290</sup>Kaiser, p. 398.

<sup>291</sup>Meyer, p. 196.

<sup>292</sup>Durham, p. 234.

miracles for Israel and to identify those miracles as coming from Himself (cf. v. 5, et al.).

Hur was the son of Caleb (v. 10; 1 Chron. 2:19; not the Caleb of later fame in Numbers and Joshua) and possibly the grandfather of Bezalel, the architect of the tabernacle (31:2, et al.). Josephus said he was the husband of Miriam.<sup>293</sup> He was an important man in Israel (cf. 24:14).

"Moses went to the top of the hill that he might see the battle from thence. He took Aaron and Hur with him, not as adjutants to convey his orders to Joshua and the army engaged, but to support him in his own part in connection with the conflict. This was to hold up his hand with the staff of God in it. To understand the meaning of this sign, it must be borne in mind that, although ver. 11 merely speaks of the raising and dropping of the hand (in the singular), yet, according to ver. 12, both hands were supported by Aaron and Hur, who stood one on either side, so that Moses did not hold up his hands alternately, but grasped the staff with both his hands, and held it up with the two."<sup>294</sup>

"Moses lifted his hands, in symbol of the power of Yahweh upon the fighting men of Israel, surely, but in some miraculous way Moses' upraised hands became also conductors of that power."<sup>295</sup>

Moses' actions suggest that he was engaging in intercessory prayer, though reference to prayer is absent in the text. The emphasis is on the rod that Moses held in his hand, the instrument of God's power.

"The lifting up of the hands has been regarded almost with unvarying unanimity by Targumists, Rabbins, Fathers, Reformers, and nearly all the more modern commentators, as the sign or attitude of prayer. . . . The lifting up of the staff secured to the warriors the strength needed to obtain the victory, from the fact that by means of the staff Moses brought down this strength from above, i.e., from the Almighty God in heaven; not indeed by a merely spiritless and unthinking elevation of the staff, but by the power of his prayer, which was embodied in the lifting up of his hands with the staff, and was so far strengthened thereby, that God had chosen and already employed this staff as the medium of the saving manifestation of His almighty power.

---

<sup>293</sup>Josephus, 3:2:4.

<sup>294</sup>Keil and Delitzsch, 2:79.

<sup>295</sup>Durham, p. 236.

There is no other way in which we can explain the effect produced upon the battle by the raising and dropping . . . of the staff in his hands. . . . God had not promised him miraculous help for the conflict with the Amalekites, and for this reason he lifted up his hands with the staff in prayer to God, that he might thereby secure the assistance of Jehovah for His struggling people. At length he became exhausted, and with the falling of his hands and the staff he held, the flow of divine power ceased, so that it was necessary to support his arms, that they might be kept firmly directed upwards . . . until the enemy was entirely subdued."<sup>296</sup>

"The significance of this is that Israel's strength lay only in a continuous appeal to the Lord's power and a continuous remembrance of what He had already done for them . . ."<sup>297</sup>

"Why do you fail in your Christian life? Because you have ceased to pray! Why does that young Christian prevail? Ah, in the first place, he prays for himself; but also, there are those in distant places, mothers, sisters, grandparents, who would think that they sinned, if they ceased to pray for him, and they will not fail to lift up their hands for him until the going down of the sun of their lives!"<sup>298</sup>

This battle was more important than may appear on the surface.

"As the heathen world was now commencing its conflict with the people of God in the persons of the Amalekites, and the prototype of the heathen world, with its hostility to God, was opposing the nation of the Lord, that had been redeemed from the bondage of Egypt and was on its way to Canaan, to contest its entrance into the promised inheritance; so the battle which Israel fought with this foe possessed a typical significance in relation to all the future history of Israel. It could not conquer by the sword alone, but could only gain the victory by the power of God, coming down from on high, and obtained through prayer and those means of grace with which it had been entrusted."<sup>299</sup>

What was the immediate significance of this battle for Israel? Israel learned that God would give them victory over their enemies as they relied on Him.

---

<sup>296</sup>Keil and Delitzsch, 2:79-81.

<sup>297</sup>Gispen, p. 169.

<sup>298</sup>Meyer, p. 202.

<sup>299</sup>Keil and Delitzsch, 2:81. Cf. Zech. 4:6; John 15:5.

"Jehovah used the attack of Amalek on Israel, at the very beginning of their national history, to demonstrate to His chosen people the potency of intercession. The event reveals a mighty means of strength and victory which God has graciously afforded His people of all ages."<sup>300</sup>

17:14-16 This is the first of five instances in the Pentateuch where we read that Moses wrote down something at the Lord's command (cf. 24:4, 7; 34:27; Num. 33:1-2; Deut. 31:9, 24).<sup>301</sup> Clearly Moses could write, which some critics of the Bible have questioned.

God promised the eventual destruction of the Amalekites to strengthen Joshua's faith in God's help against all Israel's enemies (v. 14). Later God commanded him to exterminate the Amalekites after he had conquered Canaan (Deut. 25:19). The Bible mentions the Amalekites for the last time in 1 Chronicles 4:43 when a remnant of them perished in Hezekiah's day. Some commentators have identified Haman, called an Agagite in the Book of Esther, with the Amalekites.<sup>302</sup> Agag was evidently an Amalekite name or title (cf. 1 Sam. 15:32-33). There is serious question, however, that Haman was a descendant of the Amalekites, as some of the better commentaries on Esther point out.

The altar commemorated God's victory and self-revelation as the One who would provide victory for Israel against her enemies (v. 15). The banner was a flag that the victor could raise over his defeated foe.

"The sight of Moses so blessing Israel and judging Amalek would symbolize Yahweh, by whom all blessing and all cursing were believed to be empowered; thus the altar was named not 'Moses is my standard,' or 'The staff of Elohim is my standard,' but '*Yahweh* is my standard.'"<sup>303</sup>

God set Himself against the Amalekites because they set themselves against His people and His purposes through them (v. 16).<sup>304</sup>

"The battle between Yahweh and Amalek will continue across the generations because the Amalekites have raised a hand against Yahweh's throne, that is, they have challenged his sovereignty by attacking his people."<sup>305</sup>

---

<sup>300</sup>D. Edmond Hiebert, *Working with God: Scriptural Studies in Intercession*, p. 57. All of chapter 5 of this excellent book deals with Exodus 17:8-16.

<sup>301</sup>Kaiser, "Exodus," p. 409.

<sup>302</sup>E.g., Hyatt, p. 183.

<sup>303</sup>Durham, p. 237.

<sup>304</sup>On God's use of war against His enemies, see Craigie, *The Problem . . .*, and John Wenham, *The Goodness of God*.

<sup>305</sup>Durham, p. 237.

"In Amalek the heathen world commenced that conflict with the people of God, which, while it aims at their destruction, can only be terminated by the complete annihilation of the ungodly powers of the world. . . . Whereas he [Moses] had performed all the miracles in Egypt and on the journey by stretching out his staff, on this occasion he directed his servant Joshua to choose men for the war, and to fight the battle with the sword. He himself went with Aaron and Hur to the summit of a hill to hold up the staff of God in his hands, that he might procure success to the warriors through the spiritual weapons of prayer."<sup>306</sup>

"I am convinced beyond any doubt that virtually all advances for Christ come because of believers who understand and practice prayer."<sup>307</sup>

In all the crises the Israelites had faced since they left Egypt, God was teaching them to look to Him. They should do so for deliverance from their enemies (at the Red Sea), for health and healing (at Marah), and for food and guidance (in the wilderness of Sin). They should also do so for water and refreshment (at Massah-Meribah) and for victory over their enemies in battle (at Rephidim). He was teaching them how dependent they were on Him and that they should turn to Him in any and every need (cf. John 15:5).

Once again the Lord provided for His people, continued to provide for them, and proved His presence again to Israel and to Israel's enemies.<sup>308</sup>

"The present narrative in Exodus 17 appears to have been shaped by its relationship to the events recorded in Numbers 21:1-3, the destruction of Arad. The two narratives are conspicuously similar. Here in Exodus 17, the people murmured over lack of water and Moses gave them water from the rock (vv. 1-7). They were attacked by the Amalekites but went on to defeat them miraculously while Moses held up his hands (in prayer?). So also in the narrative in Numbers 21, after an account of Israel's murmuring and of getting water from the rock (20:1-13), Israel was attacked but miraculously went on to defeat the Canaanites because of Israel's vow, which the narrative gives in the form of a prayer (21:1-3).

"The parallels between the two narratives suggest an intentional identification of the Amalekites in the Exodus narratives and the Canaanites in Numbers 21:1-3."<sup>309</sup>

---

<sup>306</sup>Keil and Delitzsch, 2:78.

<sup>307</sup>R. Kent Hughes, *Living on the Cutting Edge*, p.11.

<sup>308</sup>Durham, p. 238.

<sup>309</sup>Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch . . .*, pp. 279-80.

Sailhamer charted the parallel literary structures of the two incidents similar to what follows.

- A Manna and quail (Exod. 16:4-34)
- B 40 years (Exod. 16:35)
- C Water from the rock (Exod. 17:1-7)
- D Joshua, the next leader (Exod. 17:8-13)
- E Battle with the Amalekites (Exod. 17:14-16)
  
- A' Manna and quail (Num. 11:4-34)
- B' 40 years (Num. 14:21-22)
- C' Water from the rock (Num. 20:1-12)
- D' Eleazar, the next priest (Num. 20:23-29)
- E' Battle with the Canaanites (Num. 21:1-16)<sup>310</sup>

### **5. The friendliness of Jethro the Midianite ch. 18**

As a Midianite, Jethro was a descendant of Abraham, as was Amalek. Both were blood relatives of the Israelites. Nevertheless the attitudes of the Amalekites and Jethro were very different, though Midian as a nation was hostile to Israel. Set next to each other in the text as they are, the experiences of Israel with Amalek and with Jethro illustrate two different attitudes that others held toward Israel. These differences have characterized the attitudes of outsiders toward God's elect throughout history.<sup>311</sup>

18:1-12 The names of Moses' sons (vv. 3-4) reflect his personal experiences in the providence of God. However, not all biblical names carry such significance.

"It is a very precarious procedure to attempt to analyze the character or disposition of an Old Testament character on the basis of the etymology of his name alone."<sup>312</sup>

Many names were significant (e.g., Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, Israel, etc.), but not all were.

The mount of God (v. 5) is the mountain where God revealed Himself and His law to Israel, Mt. Sinai. The wilderness was the wilderness near Sinai.

---

<sup>310</sup>Adapted from *ibid.*, p. 278.

<sup>311</sup>Cf. Kaiser, "Exodus," p. 408.

<sup>312</sup>Davis, p. 187.

"Moses' summary [vv. 8-10] is a proof-of-Presence summary, a confession of Yahweh's powerful protection of and provision for Israel."<sup>313</sup>

Jethro acknowledged the sovereignty of God (v. 11). This does not prove he was a monotheist, though he could have been. Jethro was a God-fearing man, evidently part of a believing minority in Midian. He gave evidence of his faith by offering a burnt offering and by making sacrifices to Yahweh (v. 12). The meal that Moses, Aaron, and the Israelite elders ate with Jethro was the sacrificial meal just mentioned. Eating together in the ancient Near East was a solemn occasion because it constituted the establishment of an alliance between the parties involved. That is undoubtedly what it involved here. The fact that Aaron and all the elders of Israel were also present demonstrated its importance.

18:13-23 Moses experienced a crisis of overwork (cf. Acts 6:1-7). Previously he had had to cope with a lack of food and a lack of water. This section explains how he overcame the present crisis. It also explains the beginning of Israel's legal system. Here we see how the requirements and instructions of the Mosaic Covenant became accessible to the ordinary Israelite and applicable to the problems that arose as the Israelites oriented their lives to that code.<sup>314</sup>

Clearly Israel already at this time had a body of revealed law (v. 16; cf. 15:26). I shall say more about older ancient Near Eastern law codes in my comments on 21:1—23:19. God greatly expanded this with the giving of the Mosaic Covenant.

Evidently the people were becoming unruly because Moses was not dispensing justice quickly (v. 23). Jethro's counsel was wise and practical, and he presented it subject to the will of God (v. 23). Moses may not have realized the seriousness of the problem he faced. He seems to have been a gifted administrator who would not have consciously let Israel's social welfare deteriorate. However, his efficiency expert father-in-law pointed out how he could manage his time better.

Notice the importance of modeling integrity in verse 21. Integrity means matching walk with talk, practicing what one preaches. This has always been an important qualification for leaders.

"Mr. [Dwight L.] Moody said shrewdly: It is better to set a hundred men to work, than do the work of a hundred men. You do a service to a man when you evoke his latent

---

<sup>313</sup>Durham, p. 244.

<sup>314</sup>Ibid., p. 248.

faculty. It is no kindness to others or service to God to do more than your share in the sacred duties of Church life."<sup>315</sup>

18:24-27 Moses allowed the people to nominate wise, respected men from their tribes whom he appointed as judges (v. 25; cf. Deut. 1:12-18). These men handled the routine disputes of the Israelites, and this kept Moses free to resolve the major problems.

Jethro returned to his native land (v. 27), but he visited Moses and his daughter and grandchildren again (cf. Num. 10:29), perhaps often during the following 40 years.

"In times of great crises God always provided men to lead the way to deliverance. Moses is an eloquent example of this very fact. The hand of God providentially prepared this man for this very moment. He was cognizant of Egyptian manners and was therefore able to articulate demands before the King of Egypt. Moses had been trained in military matters and was therefore capable of organizing this large mass of people for movement across the deserts. His training in Egypt had given him the ability to write and therefore provided a means by which these accounts would be recorded for eternity. Forty years of desert experience had given Moses the know-how of travel in these areas as well as the kind of preparation that would be needed to survive the desert heat. All of this a mere accident of history? No indeed. The history before us is a supreme example of God's sovereign ability to accomplish His purposes for His people. Those who belong to Him have every reason to be confident that that which God has promised He will perform."<sup>316</sup>

"The present narrative has many parallels with the accounts in Genesis 14 and 15. Just as Melchizedek the priest of Salem (*salem*) met Abraham bearing gifts as he returned from the battle with Amraphel (Ge 14:18-20), so Jethro the Midianite priest came out with Moses' wife and sons to offer peace (*salom*, 18:7; NIV 'they greeted each other') as he returned from the battle with the Amalekites. . . . The purpose of these parallels appears to be to cast Jethro as another Melchizedek, the paradigm of the righteous Gentile. It is important that Jethro have such credentials because he plays a major role in this chapter, instructing Moses, the lawgiver himself, how to carry out the administration of God's Law to Israel. Thus, just as Abraham was met by Melchizedek the priest (Ge 14) before God made a covenant with him in Genesis 15, so Moses is met by Jethro the priest (Ex 18) before God makes a covenant with him at Sinai (Ex 19)."<sup>317</sup>

---

<sup>315</sup>Meyer, p. 210.

<sup>316</sup>Davis, pp. 189-90.

<sup>317</sup>Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch . . .*, pp. 280-81.

| <b>MELCHIZEDEK (GEN. 14:17-24)</b>  | <b>JETHRO (EXOD. 18:1-27)</b>  |
|---|--|
| He was a Gentile priest of Salem (Gen. 14:18).  | He was a Gentile priest of Midian (Exod. 18:1).                            |
| He met Abraham bearing gifts as Abraham returned from defeating the Mesopotamians (Gen. 14:18). | He met Moses as Moses returned from defeating the Amalekites (Exod. 18:5). |
| He brought gifts to Abraham (Gen. 14:18).   | He brought Moses' wife and sons to Moses (Exod. 18:2-6).                   |
| He was king of peace (Heb. <i>salem</i> , Gen. 14:18).  | He offered Moses peace (Heb. <i>salom</i> , Exod. 18:7).                   |
| Abraham's heir was Eliezer ("God is my help," Gen. 15:2).                                       | Moses' heir was Eliezer ("God is my help," Exod. 18:4).                    |
| Melchizedek praised God for rescuing Abraham from the Amalekites (Gen. 14:19-20).               | Jethro praised God for rescuing Moses from the Egyptians (Exod. 18:10-11). |
| He offered bread and wine (Gen. 14:18).   | He offered sacrifices and ate bread with Moses (Exod. 18:12).              |

### **B. THE ESTABLISHMENT OF THE MOSAIC COVENANT 19:1—24:11**

The Lord had liberated Israel from bondage in Egypt, but now He adopted the nation into a special relationship with Himself.

"Now begins the most sublime section in the whole Book. The theme of this section is supremely significant, playing a role of decisive importance in the history of Israel and of humanity as a whole."<sup>318</sup>

At Sinai, Israel received the law and the tabernacle. The law facilitated the obedience of God's redeemed people, and the tabernacle facilitated their worship. Thus the law and the tabernacle deal with the two major expressions of the faith of the people redeemed by the grace and power of God: obedience and worship.

Here begins the fifth dispensation, the dispensation of the law. It ended with the death of Christ, who alone fulfilled all its requirements and, as a second Moses, superceded it with His own teaching. God gave the Israelites the law "because of [their] transgressions" (Gal. 3:19), which we have seen they committed after their redemption. The law taught the wayward Israelites, and teaches all readers of this history, the awesome holiness of God (19:10-25) and the exceeding sinfulness of man (Rom. 7:13; 1 Tim. 1:8-10). It also taught and teaches the necessity of obedience (Jer. 7:23-24), the universality of human failure (Rom. 3:19-20, 23), and the marvel of God's grace that provided a way whereby redeemed sinners could have ongoing relationship with God (Rom. 3:21-22).

---

<sup>318</sup>Cassuto, p. 223.

The law did not change the provisions or abrogate the promises that God gave in the Abrahamic Covenant. God did not give it as a means of justification for unbelievers (Acts 15:10-11; Gal. 2:16, 21; 3:3-9, 14, 17, 24-25) but as a means of sanctification, rules for living, for a redeemed people. It clarified for them that purity and holiness should characterize their lives as the people of God. It was "child training" through disciplinary restriction and correction designed to prepare them for the coming of Christ when they as a people would "come of age" (Deut. 6:24; Gal. 3:24, 26; 4:1-7; Titus 2:11-13). The Israelites, however, misinterpreted the purpose of the law and sought to obtain righteousness by their good deeds and ceremonial ordinances (Acts 15:1; Rom. 9:31—10:3; 1 Tim. 1:8-10). Israel's history was one long record of violating the law, even to rejecting their own Messiah whom Moses told them to heed (Deut. 18:15).

The Mosaic Covenant is an outgrowth of the Abrahamic Covenant in the sense that it was a significant, intimate agreement between God and Abraham's descendants. By observing it the Israelites could achieve their purpose as a nation. This purpose was to experience God's blessing and to be a blessing to all nations of the earth (Gen. 12:2). In contrast to the Abrahamic Covenant, Israel had responsibilities to fulfill to obtain God's promised blessings (v. 5). It was, therefore, a conditional covenant. The Abrahamic Covenant—as well as the Davidic and New Covenants that contain expansions of the promises in the Abrahamic Covenant—was unconditional.

A further contrast is this.

"Whereas the Sinaitic covenant was based on an already accomplished act of grace and issued in stringent stipulations, the patriarchal covenant rested only on the divine promise and demanded of the worshipper only his trust (e.g., ch. 15:6)."<sup>319</sup>

"The covenant with Israel at Sinai is to bring Israel into a position of mediatorial service."<sup>320</sup>

"The major difference between the Mosaic covenant and the Abrahamic covenant is that the former was conditional and also was *ad interim*, that is, it was a covenant for a limited period, beginning with Moses and ending with Christ. . . .

"In contrast to the other covenants, the Mosaic covenant, though it had provisions for grace and forgiveness, nevertheless builds on the idea that obedience to God is necessary for blessing. While this to some extent is true in every dispensation, the Mosaic covenant was basically a works covenant rather than a grace covenant. The works principle, however, was limited to the matter of blessing in this life and was not related at all to the question of salvation for eternity."<sup>321</sup>

---

<sup>319</sup>Bright, pp. 91-92.

<sup>320</sup>Eugene H. Merrill, "The Mosaic Covenant: A Proposal for Its Theological Significance," *Exegesis and Exposition* 3:1 (Fall 1988):29.

<sup>321</sup>John F. Walvoord, "The New Covenant," in *Integrity of Heart, Skillfulness of Hands*, pp. 191-92.

The Mosaic Covenant is the heart of the Pentateuch.

"First, it should be pointed out that the most prominent event and the most far-reaching theme in the Pentateuch, viewed entirely on its own, is the covenant between Yahweh and Israel established at Mount Sinai. . . .

"1) The author of the Pentateuch wants to draw a connecting link between God's original plan of blessing for mankind and his establishment of the covenant with Israel at Sinai. Put simply, the author sees the covenant at Sinai as God's plan to restore his blessing to mankind through the descendants of Abraham (Gen 12:1-3; Exod 2:24).

"2) The author of the Pentateuch wants to show that the Covenant at Sinai failed to restore God's blessing to mankind because Israel failed to trust God and obey his will.

"3) The author of the Pentateuch wants to show that God's promise to restore the blessing would ultimately succeed because God himself would one day give to Israel a heart to trust and obey God (Deut 30:1-10)."<sup>322</sup>

The writer interrupted the narrative sections of Exodus with blocks of other explanatory, qualifying, and cultic material in the chapters that follow.<sup>323</sup>

|                             |                         |                               |                           |                             |                                 |                             |                       |                           |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>Narrative</b><br>19:1-3a | <b>Other</b><br>19:3b-9 | <b>Narrative</b><br>19:10-19a | <b>Other</b><br>19:19b-25 | <b>Narrative</b><br>20:1-21 | <b>Other</b><br>20:22—<br>23:33 | <b>Narrative</b><br>24:1-18 | <b>Other</b><br>25-31 | <b>Narrative</b><br>32-34 |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------|

Another scholar observed the following chiasmic structure in chapters 19—24.<sup>324</sup>

- A** Narrative: the covenant offered (19:3-25)  
**B** Law: the Decalogue (20:1-17)  
**C** Narrative: the people's fear (20:18-21)  
**B'** Law: the Book of the Covenant (20:22—23:33)  
**A'** Narrative: the covenant accepted (24:1-11)

### **1. Preparation for the Covenant ch. 19**

Moses revealed God's purpose for giving the Mosaic Covenant in this chapter.

19:1-6 The Israelites arrived at the base of the mountain where God gave them the law about three months after they had left Egypt, in May-June (v. 1). The mountain in the Sinai range that most scholars have regarded as the

<sup>322</sup>John H. Sailhamer, "Exegetical Notes: Genesis 1:1—2:4a," *Trinity Journal* 5 NS (Spring 1984):75, 76.

<sup>323</sup>Durham, p. 258.

<sup>324</sup>Joe M. Sprinkle, "Law and Narrative in Exodus 19—24," *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society*, 47:2 (June 2004):242.

mountain peak referred to in this chapter stands in the southeastern part of the Sinai Peninsula. Its name in Arabic is *Jebel Musa*, mountain of Moses.<sup>325</sup> There is a natural slope to the land to the southeast of this peak, and another plain to the north, which would have afforded Israel a good view of the mountain if the people camped there. However the location of biblical Mt. Sinai continues to be uncertain. The nation stayed at Mt. Sinai 11 months (Num. 10:11). The record of their experiences here continues through Numbers 10:10.

Many reliable scholars have considered verses 3-6 the very heart of the Pentateuch because they contain the classic expression of the nature and purpose of the theocratic covenant that God made with Israel, the Mosaic Covenant.

God gave the Mosaic Law specifically "to the house of Jacob . . . the sons of Israel" (v. 3).<sup>326</sup>

"The image of the eagle [v. 4] is based on the fact that the eagle, when its offspring learns [*sic*] to fly, will catch them on its wings when they fall."<sup>327</sup>

"Without doubt Exodus 19:4-6 is the most theologically significant text in the book of Exodus, for it is the linchpin between the patriarchal promises of the sonship of Israel and the Sinaitic Covenant whereby Israel became the servant nation of Yahweh."<sup>328</sup>

God's promise to Israel here (vv. 5-6) went beyond what He had promised Abraham. *If* Israel would be obedient to God, He would do three things for the nation (cf. Josh. 24:15).

1. Israel would become God's special treasure (v. 5). This means that Israel would enjoy a unique relationship with God compared with all other nations. This was not due to any special goodness in Israel but strictly to the sovereign choice of God.
2. Israel would become a kingdom of priests (v. 6). This is the first occurrence in Scripture of the word "kingdom" as referring to God's rule through men on earth. A priest stands between God and people. Israel could become a nation of mediators standing

---

<sup>325</sup>See Israel Finkelstein, "Raider of the Lost Mountain—An Israeli Looks at the Most Recent Attempt to Locate Mt. Sinai," *Biblical Archaeology Review* 15:4 (July-August 1988):46-50.

<sup>326</sup>For an illustration of the confusion that failure to observe this fact can create in teaching on the Christian's relationship to the Law, see Sakae Kubo, "Why then the Law?" *Ministry* (March 1980), pp. 12-14.

<sup>327</sup>Gispen, p. 179.

<sup>328</sup>Merrill, "A Theology . . .," p. 32. Cf. William J. Dumbrell, *Covenant and Creation*, pp. 80-81.

between God and the other nations, responsible for bringing them to God and God to them. Israel would not be a kingdom run by politicians depending on strength and wit but by priests depending on faith in Yahweh: a servant nation rather than a ruling nation.<sup>329</sup>

3. Israel would become a holy nation (v. 6). "Holy" means set apart and therefore different. The Israelites would become different from other peoples because they would devote themselves to God and separate from sin and defilement as they obeyed the law of God. In these notes I have capitalized "Law" when referring to the Pentateuch, the Law of Moses, or the Ten Commandments and have used the lowercase "law" for all other references to law.

In short, Israel could have become a testimony to the whole world of how glorious it can be to live under the government of God. The people experienced these blessings only partially because their obedience was partial. Israel's disobedience to the Mosaic Covenant did not invalidate any of God's promises to Abraham, however. Those promises did not rest on Israel's obedience, as these did (cf. Gen. 15:17-21 and Exod. 19:5-6).<sup>330</sup>

19:7-15

The reaction of the Israelites to God's promises was understandably positive, and God approved it (Deut. 5:27-28). They wanted what God offered them. However, they overestimated their own ability to keep the covenant, and they underestimated God's standards for them. This twin error is traceable to a failure to appreciate their own sinfulness and God's holiness. The Mosaic Law would teach them to appreciate both more realistically (cf. Deut. 5:29).

God designed the procedures He specified in verses 10-15 to help the people realize the difference between their holy God and their sinful selves. Notice that God separated Himself from the Israelites spatially and temporally.

The temporary prohibition against normal sexual relations (v. 15) seems intended to impress the importance of this occasion on the Israelites and to help them concentrate on it. We should not infer from this command that normal sexual relations are sinful (cf. Gen. 1:28; 9:1, 7). Abstention was for ritual cleanness, not moral cleanness.

19:16-25

God again used the symbol of fire to reveal Himself on this mountain (3:2-5). Fire is a symbol of His holiness that enlightens, purges, and refines. The smoke and quaking that accompanied the fire further impressed this awesome revelation on the people.

---

<sup>329</sup>Durham, p. 263.

<sup>330</sup>See Arnold G. Fruchtenbaum, "Israel and the Church," in *Issues in Dispensationalism*, pp. 113-15, for a good discussion of Israel's national election and how this relates to the individual election of Israelites.

The priests referred to (vv. 22, 24) were evidently young men (first-born?) that offered sacrifices before God appointed the Aaronic priests to this service (cf. 24:5).

Comparative ancient Near Eastern studies have revealed that the covenant form and terminology that God used to communicate His agreement with Israel were common in Moses' day. There were two basic types of formal covenants in the ancient Near East: *parity* (between equals) and *suzerainty* (between a sovereign and his subjects). The Mosaic Covenant was a suzerainty treaty. Such agreements characteristically contained a preamble (v. 3), historical prologue (v. 4), statement of general principles (v. 5a), consequences of obedience (vv. 5b-6a), and consequences of disobedience (omitted here). In 1977, Kenneth Kitchen wrote the following.

"Some forty different [suzerainty] treaties . . . are known to us, covering seventeen centuries from the late third millennium BC well into the first millennium BC, excluding broken fragments, and now additional ones still to be published from Ebla."<sup>331</sup>

Thus the form in which God communicated His covenant to Moses and Israel was undoubtedly familiar to them. It enabled them to perceive better the nature of the relationship into which they were entering.<sup>332</sup>

The Mosaic Law consisted of three classes of requirements: those governing *moral* life (the Ten Commandments), those governing *religious* life (the ceremonial ordinances), and those governing *civil* life (the civil statutes). The commandments expressed the righteous will of God (Exod. 20), the judgments governed Israel's social life (Exod. 21:1—24:11), and the ordinances determined Israel's religious life (Exod. 24:12—31:18). God gave the whole Law specifically for the nation of Israel (v. 3). It is very important to recognize how comprehensive the Mosaic Law was and not limit it to the Ten Commandments. The rabbis, after Maimonides, counted 613 commands, 248 positive and 365 negative, in the law. Maimonides was a Jewish philosopher and exegete who lived in the twelfth century A.D. and wrote *Sepher Mitzvoth* ("Book of the Commandments"), the definitive Jewish list of laws in the Pentateuch.<sup>333</sup>

There were three categories of law in Israel.

1. Crimes were actions that the community prohibited under the will of God and punished in its name. Murder (Exod. 21:12), adultery (Lev. 20:10; Deut. 22:22), and the kidnapping of persons for sale outside Israel (Exod. 21:16) are examples of crimes. These offenses resulted in the punishment of the guilty party by the community as a community (Exod. 21:12-16).

<sup>331</sup>Kenneth Kitchen, *The Bible In Its World*, p. 79.

<sup>332</sup>See George E. Mendenhall, *Law and Covenant in Israel and the Near East*; Meredith Kline, *The Treaty of the Great King*; and F. C. Fensham, "Extra-biblical Material and the Hermeneutics of the Old Testament with Special Reference to the Legal Material of the Covenant Code," *OTWSA* 20 & 21 (1977 & 78):53-65.

<sup>333</sup>For a summary of Maimonides' list, see the Appendix in Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch . . .*, pp. 481-516.

2. Torts were civil wrongs that resulted in an action by the injured party against the party who had wronged him. Assault (Exod. 21:18-27), the seduction of an unmarried or betrothed girl (Exod. 22:16-17), and theft of animals or other property (Exod. 22:1-4) are examples of torts. Conviction resulted in the guilty party paying damages to the injured party (Exod. 21:18-27).
3. Family law did not involve the courts, but the head of the household administered it in the home. Divorce (Deut. 24:1-4), the making of slavery permanent (Exod. 21:1-6), and adoption (cf. Gen. 15:2; 30:3; 48:5, 12; 2 Sam. 7:14; Ps. 2:7) are examples. In these cases the head of the household acted unilaterally. He did not, however, have the power of life or death.<sup>334</sup>

God gave the Mosaic Law to the Israelites for several purposes:

1. To reveal the holiness of God (1 Peter 1:15)
2. To reveal the sinfulness of man (Gal. 3:19)
3. To reveal the standard of holiness required of those in fellowship with God (Ps. 24:3-5)
4. To supervise physical, mental, and spiritual development of redeemed Israelites until they should come to maturity in Christ (Gal. 3:24; Ps. 119:71-72)
5. To be the unifying principle that made the establishment of the nation possible (Exod. 19:5-8; Deut. 5:27-28)
6. To separate Israel from the nations to become a kingdom of priests (Exod. 19:5-6; 31:13)
7. To make provision for forgiveness of sins and restoration to fellowship (Lev. 1—7)
8. To make provision for a redeemed people to worship by observing and participating in the yearly festivals (Lev. 23)
9. To provide a test whether one was in the kingdom (theocracy) over which God ruled (Deut. 28)
10. To reveal Jesus Christ.

J. Dwight Pentecost concluded his article on the purpose of the Law, from which I took the preceding 10 points, by pointing out the following.

". . . there was in the Law that which was *revelatory* of the holiness of God. . . ." There was also ". . . that in the Law which was *regulatory*."<sup>335</sup>

"It is extremely important to remember that the Law of Moses was given to a *redeemed people*, not to *redeem a people*."<sup>336</sup>

<sup>334</sup>See Anthony Phillips, *Ancient Israel's Criminal Law*; and idem, "Some Aspects of Family Law in Pre-Exilic Israel," *Vetus Testamentum* 23 (1973):349-361, for further discussion of these categories.

<sup>335</sup>J. Dwight Pentecost, "The Purpose of the Law," *Bibliotheca Sacra* 128:511 (July-September 1971):233. See also idem, *Thy Kingdom . . .*, pp. 88-93.

<sup>336</sup>*Ibid.*, p. 87. Cf. Johnson, p. 68.

". . . it is also possible that the Pentateuch has intentionally included this selection of laws for another purpose, that is, *to give the reader an understanding of the nature of the Mosaic Law and God's purpose in giving it to Israel*. Thus it is possible to argue that the laws in the Pentateuch are not there to tell the *reader* how to live but rather to tell the reader how Moses was to live under the law.

"This understanding of the purpose of the laws in the Pentateuch is supported by the observation that the collections of laws in the Pentateuch appear to be incomplete and selective. The Pentateuch as such is not designed as a source of legal action. That the laws in the Pentateuch are incomplete is suggested by the fact that many aspects of ordinary community life are not covered in these laws."<sup>337</sup>

A movement that has gained some followers, especially in the United States, is the Christian Reconstruction movement, also known as the theonomy movement, and the Chalcedon school. Its central thesis is that God intended the Mosaic Law to be normative for all people for all time. Its advocates look forward to a day when Christians will govern everyone using the Old Testament as the law book. Reconstructionism rests on three foundational points: presuppositional apologetics, theonomy (lit. the rule of God), and postmillennialism. The main flaw in this system, from my perspective, is failure to distinguish God's purposes for Israel from His purposes for the church.<sup>338</sup>

## **2. The Ten Commandments 20:1-17**

"We now reach the climax of the entire Book, the central and most exalted theme, all that came before being, as it were, a preparation for it, and all that follows, a result of, and supplement to it."<sup>339</sup>

There are two types of law in the Old Testament, and these existed commonly in the ancient Near East. *Apodictic laws* are commands with the force of categorical imperatives. They are positive or negative. The Ten Commandments are an example of this type of law, which occurs almost exclusively in the Old Testament and rarely in other ancient Near Eastern law codes. "Thou shalt . . ." and "Thou shalt not . . ." identify this type of law. *Casuistic laws* are commands that depend on qualifying circumstances. They are also positive or negative, and there are many examples in the Mosaic Law (e.g., 21:2-11, et al.) as well as in other ancient Near Eastern law codes. This type of law is identifiable by the "If . . . then . . ." construction.

---

<sup>337</sup>Sailhamer, "The Mosaic . . .," pp. 244, 245.

<sup>338</sup>For a popular introduction to this movement, see Rodney Clapp, "Democracy as Heresy," *Christianity Today* (February 20, 1987), pp. 17-23. See also Robert Lightner, "Theological Perspectives on Theonomy," *Bibliotheca Sacra* 143:569 (January-March 1986):26-36; 143:570 (April-June 1986):134-45; and 143:571 (July-September 1986):228-45, for a scholarly dispensational critique; and Meredith Kline, "Comments on an Old-New Error," *Westminster Theological Journal* 41:1 (Fall 1978):172-89, for a scholarly reformed evaluation of the movement. The essay by Douglas Chismar and David Raush, "Regarding Theonomy: An Essay of Concern," *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society* 27:3 (September 1984):315-23, is also helpful.

<sup>339</sup>Cassuto, p. 235.

Compared with other ancient Near Eastern codes (e.g., the Code of Hammurabi) the Decalogue (Ten Commandments) is positive and concise. God allowed the Israelites much freedom. There were comparatively few restrictions on their personal behavior (cf. Gen. 1:29-30; 2:16-17).

"The Ten Commandments were unique in Old Testament times because they possessed prohibitions in the second person singular and because they stressed both man's exclusive worship of one God and man's honoring the other person's body, rights, and possessions. Breaking these commandments would result in spiritual confusion and in human exploitation."<sup>340</sup>

The Ten Commandments use verbs, not nouns. Nouns leave room for debate, but verbs do not. God gave His people ten commandments, not ten suggestions.

Though Moses did not mention it here, angels played some part in mediating the law from God to the Israelites through him (cf. Deut. 33:2; Gal. 3:19; Heb. 2:2).

### **Preface 20:1-2**

These verses form a preamble and historical background to the Decalogue that follows. The Israelites were to obey God on the double basis of who He is and what He had done for them.

Most scholars have divided the Ten Commandments (cf. Deut. 5:6-18) into two groups but in two different ways. The older Jewish method, called Philonic after the Jewish scholar Philo, was to divide them in two groups of five commandments each. The Jews believed that this is how God divided them on the two tablets of stone. The newer Christian method, called Augustinian after the church father Augustine, divided them into the first three and the last seven commandments. The basis for this division is subject matter. The first three commands deal with man's relationship with God and the last seven with his relationship with other people (cf. Matt. 22:36-40). Some scholars believe that each tablet contained all ten commandments in keeping with the ancient Near Eastern custom of making duplicate copies of covenant documents.<sup>341</sup> This explanation makes the most sense to me.

### **The first commandment 20:3**

"The Lutheran and Roman Catholic churches follow Augustine in making verses 2-6 the first commandment, and then dividing verse 17, on covetousness, into two. Modern Judaism makes verse 2 the first commandment and verses 3-6 the second. The earliest division, which can

<sup>340</sup>G. Herbert Livingston, *The Pentateuch in its Cultural Environment*, p. 158.

<sup>341</sup>Kline, *Treaty of . . .*, ch. 2: "The Two Tables of the Covenant," pp. 13-26; idem, "Deuteronomy," in *The Wycliffe Bible Commentary*, p. 161; and Jack S. Deere, "Deuteronomy," in *The Bible Knowledge Commentary: Old Testament*, p. 270.

be traced back at least as far as Josephus, in the first century A.D., takes 20:3 as the first command and 20:4-6 as the second. This division was supported unanimously by the early church, and is held today by the Eastern Orthodox and most Protestant churches."<sup>342</sup>

Some scholars have argued that the first commandment comprises verses 3-6, the second verse 7, etc., and the tenth commandment begins, "You shall not covet your neighbor's wife" in verse 17b.<sup>343</sup> Most scholars do not accept this view.

This commandment was a call to monotheism and faithfulness to the Lord. Israel was to have no other gods besides Yahweh. He was not just to be the first among several (henotheism) but the only One (monotheism; cf. 1 Cor. 10:31; 1 Tim. 2:5; Acts 14:15; James 2:19; 1 John 5:20-21).

"Yahweh had opened himself to a special relationship with Israel, but that relationship could develop only if Israel committed themselves to Yahweh alone. Yahweh had rescued them and freed them, delivered them and guided them, then come to them. The next step, if there was to be a next step, belonged to them. If they were to remain in his Presence, they were not to have other gods."<sup>344</sup>

#### **The second commandment 20:4-6**

"As the first commandment forbids any association with other gods to those who would be Yahweh's, the second commandment and the two that follow it set special dimensions of their relationship with him."<sup>345</sup>

This command was a prohibition against making images or likenesses of Yahweh. God did not forbid making pictures or images of other creatures. The rationale behind this command is that any likeness of God demeans Him and retards rather than advances His worship. Furthermore, by making an image of a god people put themselves in a position of sovereignty over the deity. God wanted His people to accept their place as the creatures of the Creator. The Israelite who made an image of Yahweh would put himself or herself in the position of creator and Yahweh in the place of created thing. Also he or she would face temptation to confuse the image with God and worship it rather than Him.

The consequences of disobedience to this command would continue for a few generations, as the later history of Israel illustrated. However obedience to it would result in blessing for limitless generations (cf. Deut. 7:9-10).

"Yahweh's jealousy is a part of his holiness (Exod 34:14) and is demanded by what he *is*. It is justified by the fact that it comes only upon those who, having promised to have no God but him, have gone back on that promise.

---

<sup>342</sup>Johnson, p. 69.

<sup>343</sup>E.g., Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch . . .*, pp. 284-85.

<sup>344</sup>Durham, p. 285.

<sup>345</sup>Ibid.

Those who do so show that they 'hate' him, that they hold him in contempt: upon them in result must come a deserved judgment, across four generations."<sup>346</sup>

"The use of images and the human control of the god that was a part of their use would infringe on the freedom of Yahweh to manifest himself when and how he sovereignly determined. By prohibiting the one means by which the gods of the people around Israel supposedly manifested themselves Israel was protected from the assimilation of foreign religious values, and the prohibition of images played a significant role in the successful survival of Israel's religion. It seems clear that the prohibition of images both in practice and in its theological basis is but another example of the fundamentally different religious value-system that distinguished Israel from her ancient Near Eastern contemporaries."<sup>347</sup>

"Through sacrifice to the idol, large amounts of material productivity were funneled into the control of the Canaanite priestly and royal classes. The idol was therefore a kind of tax or tribute gathering device. In this context, Israelite hostility to cultic images yields to a possible two-fold interpretation. First, by repudiating the cultic image, Israel rid itself of an important source of wealth for the ruling classes, thereby thwarting possible internal programs seeking to reestablish political hierarchy. Second, frontier Israel was insured that agricultural goods used in cultic sacrifice would be circulated back into the producing community [cf. Deut. 12:5-7; 26:12-15]. An imageless cult was one way of enhancing political and economic self-sufficiency."<sup>348</sup>

### **The third commandment 20:7**

Taking God's name in vain means using the name of God in a common way. The name of God represents the person of God. The Israelites were to show respect for the person of God by their use of His name. They were not to use it simply for emphasis or for any unworthy objective in their speech (cf. Matt. 5:33-37; James 5:12).

"The third commandment is directed not toward Yahweh's protection, but toward Israel's. Yahweh's name, specifically the tetragrammaton but in principle *all* Yahweh's names and titles, must be honored, blessed, praised, celebrated, invoked, pronounced, and so shared. To treat Yahweh's name with disrespect is to treat his gift lightly, to underestimate his power, to scorn his Presence, and to misrepresent to the family of humankind his very nature as "The One Who Always Is."<sup>349</sup>

---

<sup>346</sup>Ibid., p. 287.

<sup>347</sup>Edward M. Curtis, "The Theological Basis for the Prohibition of Images in the Old Testament," *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society* 28:3 (September 1985):287.

<sup>348</sup>James M. Kennedy, "The Social Background of Early Israel's Rejection of Cultic Images: A Proposal," *Biblical Theology Bulletin* 17:4 (October 1987):138.

<sup>349</sup>Durham, p. 288.

The "tetragrammaton" refers to the four-letter name YHWH.

### **The fourth commandment 20:8-11**

The Sabbath was the seventh day of the week, Saturday. This day was to be a day of rest for Israel because God ceased from His creation activity on the seventh day (Gen. 2:3). God blessed it and made it holy (v. 11) in that He made it different from the other days of the week for Israel.

This is the only one of the Ten Commandments not reiterated for the church in the New Testament. Traditionally the church has celebrated the first day of the week as a memorial to Jesus Christ's resurrection, which event is the ground of our rest (Rom. 4:25).<sup>350</sup>

### **The fifth commandment 20:12**

"The first four commandments set forth the principles guiding Israel's relationship to Yahweh; and the last six commandments set forth the principles guiding Israel's relationship with the covenant community, and more broadly, with the human family. As the second, third, and fourth commandments are in many ways extensions of the first commandment, the first four commandments are the foundation for the final six commandments. And *all* of the commandments, as principles governing covenant relationships, are founded on the ultimate OT statement of relationship, which stands as prologue to the ten commandments: 'I am Yahweh, your God' . . . Because Yahweh is, and is *Israel's* God, Israel both *is* and *must become* a certain and special people."<sup>351</sup>

All Israelites were to honor their parents because parents are God's representatives to their children in God's administrative order. Thus the fifth commandment is as foundational to commandments six through ten as the first commandment is to commandments two through four. The Israelites were to honor God because He had given them life, and they were to honor their parents because they were His instruments in giving them life. The promise of long life in the Promised Land is a reminder that God gave the command to Israelites. The Apostle Paul repeated this responsibility as binding on the church in Ephesians 6:1-3 but changed the command to "obey," as well as the promise (cf. Matt. 15:3-4; Col. 3:20).<sup>352</sup>

---

<sup>350</sup>See Arnold G. Fruchtenbaum, "The Sabbath Controversy," *Biblical Research Monthly* 49:4 (July-August 1984):15-16; Gerhard Hasel, "The Sabbath in the Pentateuch," in *The Sabbath in Scripture and History*, pp. 21-43; and Merrill F. Unger, "The Significance of the Sabbath," *Bibliotheca Sacra* 123:489 (January 1966):53-59.

<sup>351</sup>Durham, p. 290.

<sup>352</sup>See Maurice E. Wagner, "How to Honor Your Parents When They've Hurt You," *Psychology for Living* 28:6 (June 1986):12-14.

**The sixth commandment 20:13**

God did not forbid killing per se. He commanded capital punishment and some war. The Hebrew word used here specifies murder, not just killing. The Israelites were to execute murderers and others under the Mosaic Law. However, He prohibited taking a human life without divine authorization. This included suicide (cf. John 3:15).<sup>353</sup>

**The seventh commandment 20:14**

Adultery is sexual intercourse when one or both partners are married (or engaged, under Israelite law; cf. Deut. 22:23-29) to someone else. Adultery destroys marriage and the home, the foundations of society (cf. Matt. 5:27-28; 1 Cor. 6:9-20). Adultery is an act, not a state. People commit adultery; they do not live in adultery, except in the sense that they may continually practice it.

**The eighth commandment 20:15**

Since stealing of any kind and under any circumstances was wrong, clearly God approved of private ownership of goods in Israel. Israel was somewhat socialistic economically, but it was not communistic (cf. Eph. 4:28).

**The ninth commandment 20:16**

Social order depends on truthful speech (cf. Lev. 19:11; Col. 3:9-10).

**The tenth commandment 20:17**

It is specifically what belongs to one's neighbor and is not for sale, contrasted with something for sale, that is the focus of this command. A legitimate desire is not the same as coveting, which is an obsessive desire. Coveting is a root attitude from which many sins in word and deed against a neighbor spring (cf. Eph. 5:3). The five categories of the most valuable possessions the neighbor could have represent all that he has.

" . . . none of the Ten Commandments reappear in the New Testament for this age of grace *as Mosaic legislation*. All of the moral *principles* of the ten laws do reappear in the New Testament in a framework of grace."<sup>354</sup>

"The influence of the Ten Words on Western morality and law is beyond calculation. They have come to be recognized as the basis of all public morality."<sup>355</sup>

<sup>353</sup>See J. P. Morgan, "The Morality of Suicide: Issues and Options," *Bibliotheca Sacra* 148:590 (April-June 1991):214-30.

<sup>354</sup>Roy L. Aldrich, "The Mosaic Ten Commandments Compared to Their Restatements in the New Testament," *Bibliotheca Sacra* 118:471 (July 1961):257. I have added italicizing for emphasis. See also Charles C. Ryrie, "The End of the Law," *Bibliotheca Sacra* 129:495 (July-September 1967):239-47, for an excellent explanation of the Christian's relationship to the Ten Commandments. Mark Rooker, *Leviticus*, pp. 67-77, also included a good discussion of the New Testament and the Law.

<sup>355</sup>Ramm, p. 127.

In view of this fact it is especially tragic that it is now illegal to post a copy of the Ten Commandments in any American public school classroom.<sup>356</sup> A fuller exposition of the Ten Commandments follows in my notes on Deuteronomy 5.

### **3. The response of the Israelites 20:18-21**

The rest of this section contains the record of the Israelites' reaction to the giving of the Law and God's reason for giving it as He did. He wanted the people to reverence Him and therefore not to sin (v. 20).

"It can be argued that in the present shape of the Pentateuch, the Decalogue (Ex 20:1-17) is intended to be read as the content of what Moses spoke to the people upon his return from the mountain in 19:25. After the Decalogue, the narrative in 20:18-21 looks back once again to the people's fear in 19:16-24. In retelling this incident, the second narrative fills the important 'gaps' in our understanding of the first."<sup>357</sup>

Similarly Genesis 2 retells the story of creation in Genesis 1 to fill in important gaps.

"The Book of the Covenant begins technically with Exodus 20:22, having been separated from the Decalogue by a brief narrative (vv. 18-21) describing the people's response to the phenomena accompanying Moses' encounter with Yahweh on Sinai (cf. 19:16-25). The technical term 'ordinances' (*mispatim*), which describes the specific stipulations of the covenant, does not occur until 21:1, so 20:22-26 serves as an introduction to the stipulation section. This introduction underlines Yahweh's exclusivity, His self-revelation to His people, and His demand to be worshiped wherever He localizes His name and in association with appropriate altars."<sup>358</sup>

God evidently spoke the Ten Commandments in the hearing of all the Israelites (19:9; 20:19, 22) to cause them to fear Him (v. 20). The people were so awestruck by this revelation that they asked Moses to relay God's words to them from then on (v. 20), which he did (v. 21).

---

<sup>356</sup>See Joyce G. Baldwin, "The Role of the Ten Commandments," *Vox Evangelica* 13 (1983):7-18, for a good synopsis of the role of the Decalogue as the Reformers and the Old Testament and New Testament writers saw it. Childs' commentary deals with the Decalogue in more detail than most others on pp. 385-439, as does Davis', pp. 196-210. Ezekiel Hopkins wrote a classic explanation of the Decalogue in 1701 from the Puritan viewpoint that has been reprinted: "Understanding the Ten Commandments," in *Classical Evangelical Essays in Old Testament Interpretation*, pp. 51-58. For a dispensational exposition of the Ten Commandments, see Steve Minter, "Ten Timeless Words (Exodus 20:1-17)," *Exegesis and Exposition* 1:1 (Fall 1986):67-80. For argumentation for the Mosaic origin of the Decalogue as opposed to a later origin, see Harold H. Rowley, "Moses and the Decalogue," *Bulletin of the John Rylands Library of the University of Manchester* 34:1 (September 1951):81-118.

<sup>357</sup>Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch . . .*, pp. 56.

<sup>358</sup>Merrill, "A Theology . . .," p. 41.

"This verse [v. 20] contrasts two types of 'fear': tormenting fear (which comes from conscious guilt or unwarranted alarm and leads to bondage) or salutary fear (which promotes and demonstrates the presence of an attitude of complete trust and belief in God; cf. the 'fear of the LORD God' beginning in Gen 22:12). This second type of fear will keep us from sinning and is at the heart of the OT's wisdom books (cf. Prov 1:7; Eccl 12:13 et al.)."<sup>359</sup>

"Whereas 19:16-24 looks at the people's fear from a divine perspective, 20:18-21 approaches it from the viewpoint of the people themselves. What we learn from both narratives, therefore, is that there was a growing need for a mediator and a priesthood in the Sinai covenant. Because of the people's fear of God's presence, they are now standing 'afar off' (20:21). Already, then, we can see the basis being laid within the narrative for the need of the tabernacle (Ex 25—31). The people who are 'afar off' must be brought near to God. This is the purpose of the instructions for the tabernacle which follow this narrative."<sup>360</sup>

#### **4. The stipulations of the Book of the Covenant 20:22—23:33**

"It is worth noting that the stipulations are enfolded within matching frames that stress the exclusivity of Yahweh (Ex. 20:22-23; cf. 23:24-25, 32-33), His presence in specified places (20:24; cf. 23:14-17, 20, 28-31), and a proper protocol and ritual by which He may be approached by His servant people (20:24-26; cf. 23:18-19). It is within the context of a vertical covenant relationship, then, that the horizontal, societal, and interpersonal relationships of the Book of the Covenant take on their ultimate meaning."<sup>361</sup>

"The section before us has something to say about each of the ten commandments, even if only incidentally."<sup>362</sup>

#### **The basic principles of worship in Israel 20:22-26**

God did not just condemn forms of worship that were inappropriate, but He instructed the Israelites positively how they were to worship Him.

"The point of the section is this: those who worship this holy God must preserve holiness in the way they worship—they worship where he permits, in the manner he prescribes, and with the blessings he promises."<sup>363</sup>

---

<sup>359</sup>Kaiser, "Exodus," p. 427.

<sup>360</sup>Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch . . .*, pp. 56-57.

<sup>361</sup>Merrill, "A Theology . . .," p. 41.

<sup>362</sup>Youngblood, p. 101.

<sup>363</sup>The NET Bible note on 20:22.

This pericope serves as an introduction to 42 judgments in 21:1—23:12. A similar section repeats the emphases of the introduction and forms a conclusion to the judgments (23:13-19).<sup>364</sup>

|  |                              |   |
|--|------------------------------|---|
| Prohibition of idolatry<br>(20:22-23)<br>Proper forms of worship<br>(20:24-26) | 42 judgments<br>(21:1—23:12) | Prohibition of idolatry<br>(23:13)<br>Proper forms of worship<br>(23:14-19) |
|--|------------------------------|---|

20:22-23 Verse 22 is a preamble and historical background for what follows. On the basis of God's revelation on the mountain, the Israelites were to obey Him as follows.

The Israelites were not to make idols representing gods other than Yahweh nor were they to represent Yahweh by making idols to help them worship Him (v. 23).

20:24-26 Yahweh permitted His people to build altars where He granted special theophanies, that is, manifestations of His presence.<sup>365</sup> These were in addition to the altars at Israel's central sanctuary (the tabernacle and later the temple; cf. Judg. 6:25-27; 13:15-20; 1 Sam. 9:11-14; 16:1-5; 1 Kings 18:30-40). They were to build these altars for formal worship and for special occasions (e.g., Josh. 8:30; Judg. 6:25-26) out of earth or uncut stone. The Canaanites used cut or "dressed" stone for their altars, and it was probably to distinguish the two that God directed Israel as He did.

Israel's altars were not to have steps, as many Canaanite altars did, so the naked flesh of the priests might not appear as they mounted them to make their offerings.

"Possibly the verse intends to oppose the practice of certain peoples in the ancient East, like the Sumerians for instance, whose priests . . . used to perform every ritual ceremony in a state of nakedness. Likewise the Egyptian priests . . . used to wear only a linen ephod, a kind of short, primitive apron."<sup>366</sup>

"This simple description of true worship is intended to portray the essence of the Sinai covenant in terms that are virtually identical to that of the religion of the patriarchs—earthen altars, burnt offerings, and simple devotion rather than elaborate rituals. A simple earthen altar is sufficient. If

<sup>364</sup>Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch . . .*, p. 289.

<sup>365</sup>Marten H. Woudstra, *The Book of Joshua*, p. 166.

<sup>366</sup>Cassuto, p. 257.

more is desired (e.g., a stone altar), then it should not be defiled with carved stones and elaborate steps. The ultimate purpose of any such ritual is the covering of human nakedness that stems from the Fall (Ex 20:26b; cf. Ge 3:7). The implication is that all ritual is only a reflection of that first gracious act of God in covering human nakedness with garments of skin (Ge 3:21)."<sup>367</sup>

### **The fundamental rights of the Israelites 21:1—23:12**

It is very important to note that various law codes already existed in the ancient Near East before the giving of the Mosaic Covenant. These included laws in the Akkadian civilization located in Mesopotamia in the twentieth century B.C. (e.g., the Laws of Eshnunna).<sup>368</sup> There were also the laws in the Sumerian civilization in the nineteenth century (e.g., the Code of Lipit-Istar).<sup>369</sup> Moreover laws in the Babylonian civilization that followed in the eighteenth century (e.g., the Code of Hammurabi)<sup>370</sup> existed, as did others. People living in the Near East at the time of the Exodus (fifteenth century) knew these laws and lived by them more or less. The Mosaic Covenant presupposes this body of legal literature. It was not given as a comprehensive legal system to a people living without any laws. Rather it was a series of instructions God gave as Israel's king for His people to govern their behavior in certain specific matters. This fact explains why the Torah (lit. instruction, i.e., the Law of Moses) does not contain fundamental instruction in many basic areas of law, such as monogamy. The instructions in the Law of Moses confirmed certain existing laws, cancelled other laws, and changed still others for the Israelites as the will of God for them.<sup>371</sup>

Moses revealed the laws that follow analogically (i.e., on the basis of the association of ideas). Analogical thinking has been more characteristic of eastern cultures and rational thinking more typical of western cultures throughout history generally speaking.

#### **Introduction 21:1**

The "ordinances" were not laws in the usual sense of that word but the rights of those living within Israel. The Book of the Covenant (20:22-23:33) was Israel's "Bill of Rights."

"A selection of 'judgments' is provided as a sample of the divine judgments which Moses gave the people. A total of forty-two 'judgments' is given. [The 42 judgments appear in the following passages in Exodus: 21:2-6, 7-11, 12-13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18-19, 20-21, 22-23, 24-26, 27, 28-32, 33-34, 35-36; 22:1-4, 5, 6, 7-9, 10-13, 14-15, 16-17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22-24, 25-27, 28, 29-30, 31; 23:1, 2-3, 4, 5, 6, 7a, 7b, 8, 9, 10-11, 12.] The

<sup>367</sup>Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch . . .*, p. 289.

<sup>368</sup>Pritchard, pp. 161-63.

<sup>369</sup>Ibid., pp. 159-61.

<sup>370</sup>Ibid., pp. 163-80.

<sup>371</sup>For further explanation, see Cassuto, pp. 257-64.

number forty-two apparently stems from the fact that the Hebrew letters in the first word of the section, 'and these' (*w'lh*), add up precisely to the number forty-two (7 x 6). (There may also be a desire to have seven laws for each of the six days of work [cf. Ex 20:11]). This suggests that the laws in 21:1—23:12 are to be understood merely as a representative selection of the whole Mosaic Law. It is not an attempt at a complete listing of all the laws. The purpose of the selection was to provide a basis for teaching the nature of divine justice. By studying specific cases of the application of God's will in concrete situations, the reader of the Pentateuch could learn the basic principles undergirding the covenant relationship. Whereas the 'ten words' provided a general statement of the basic principles of justice which God demanded of his people, the examples selected here further demonstrated how those principles, or ideals, were to be applied to real life situations."<sup>372</sup>

### Slavery 21:2-6

21:2-4      The ancients practiced slavery widely in the Near East. These laws protected slaves in Israel better than the laws of other nations protected slaves in those countries.<sup>373</sup>

We should read verse 4 with the following condition added at the end of the verse: unless he pays a ransom for them. This was possible as is clear from the instructions regarding the redemption of people that follow.

Why did God permit slavery at all? Slavery as a social institution becomes evil when others disregard the human rights of slaves. God protected the rights of slaves in Israel. Likewise the apostle Paul did not urge Philemon to set his slave Onesimus free but to treat him as a brother (Philemon 15-17). As amended by the Torah, slavery became indentured servitude in Israel for all practical purposes, similar to household servanthood in Victorian England. Mosaic law provided that male slaves in Israel should normally serve as slaves no more than a few years and then go free. In other nations, slaves often remained enslaved for life.

"We can then conclude that Exodus 21:2-4 owes nothing to non-Biblical law. Rather it is a statement of belief about the true nature of Israelite society: it should be made up of free men. Economic necessities may lead an Israelite to renounce his true heritage, but his destiny is not in the end to be subject to purely financial considerations. Exodus 21:2 is no ordinary humanitarian provision, but expresses Israel's fundamental understanding of its true identity. No

<sup>372</sup>Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch . . .*, p. 290.

<sup>373</sup>See Robert Gnuse, "Jubilee Legislation in Leviticus: Israel's Vision of Social Reform," *Biblical Theology Bulletin* 15:2 (April 1985):44.

matter how far reality failed to match the ideal, that ideal must be reaffirmed in successive legislation. So, in gradually worsening economic conditions both Deuteronomy (15:1-18) and the Holiness Code (Lev. 25:39-43) reiterate it. It is the male Israelite's right to release (Exod. 21:2-4) which explains why the laws of slavery (21:2-11) head that legislation which sought to come to terms with Israel's new found statehood with all its consequent economic problems under the united monarchy."<sup>374</sup>

Presumably female as well as male slaves could experience redemption from their condition at any time.

21:5-6 The Code of Hammurabi decreed that the master of a rebellious slave could cut off the ear of that slave. So the ear (v. 6) evidently marked the status of a slave in the ancient Near East (cf. Ps. 40:6).

#### **Betrothal of a female 21:7-11**

Females did not enjoy as much freedom as males in the ancient Near East or in Israel. They were subject to the fathers or husbands in authority over them as well as to God (cf. Eph. 5:22-24; Col. 3:18). Verses 7-11 describe a girl whom her father sells as a servant (Heb. *'amah*, v. 7) for marriage, not for slavery.<sup>375</sup> In such a case the girl would become the servant of the father of her husband-to-be who would then give her to his son as his wife. She would remain in her prospective father-in-law's household unless someone redeemed her before the consummation of her marriage. If for some reason her prospective father-in-law became displeased with her, he was to allow someone to redeem her (set her free by the payment of a price). Her redeemer could be herself or someone else (cf. Deut. 24:1). Her master was not to sell her to some other person, a "foreign" person in that sense (v. 8). Such treatment was unfair to her because it violated her legitimate human rights. "Conjugal rights" (v. 10) here refers to her living quarters and other support provisions, not sexual intercourse. This passage is not discussing marriage as such (after physical consummation) as the NIV and AV imply.

#### **Homicide 21:12-17**

21:12-14 The Torah upheld capital punishment for murder (v. 12), which God commanded of Noah (Gen. 9:6) and people in the Near East practiced from then on. It did not permit capital punishment in the case of manslaughter (unpremeditated murder, v. 13), which the Code of Hammurabi allowed.<sup>376</sup>

<sup>374</sup>Anthony Phillips, "The Laws of Slavery: Exodus 21:2-11," *Journal for the Study of the Old Testament* 30 (October 1984):62.

<sup>375</sup>Kaiser, "Exodus," p. 430.

<sup>376</sup>Code of Hammurabi, section 229, in Pritchard, pp. 163-80.

In the ancient East whoever sought sanctuary in a sacred place was safe from punishment even if he or she had deliberately murdered someone. The Torah removed that protection in the case of murder. God regarded the sanctity of human life greater than the sanctity of a place (v. 4).

21:15-17 The Code of Hammurabi specified that the person who struck his father should have his hands cut off.<sup>377</sup> The Torah took a stronger position requiring the death of the person who struck either parent. The reason seems to be that by doing so the striker did not honor his parents but revolted against God's ordained authority over him or her (v. 15; cf. 20:12).

"In the first place age is not a factor in the determining of a delinquent in the ancient Near East: age is never mentioned in the [non-biblical] texts. A minor, for all intents and purposes, was one who was living in his or her parent's house. There he or she has duties and responsibilities which place him directly under the authority of the parent. Responsibility for a minor's behavior rested solely with the parent. Any anti-social act committed by the minor was considered also an offense against the parent who dealt with it accordingly. When proceedings are initiated against a minor, as we shall see, it is the parent, not the courts, who institutes the proceedings. . . .

"In ancient times no provision was made for a minor committing a criminal act, that is, there was no special protection extended to juveniles convicted in criminal cases: the penalty for both an adult and a minor was the same. This represents a striking difference from our judicial system whereby a minor is not held to be as criminally responsible for his conduct as an adult. In effect he is granted a certain amount of protection by the courts, and his sentence is not as severe as an adult's would be in a similar case. It is curious that in the few examples we have of felonies committed by minors in the ancient Near East the opposite situation prevails. A minor receives a more severe sentence than an adult would in a comparable case. . . .

"At this point we should not get too exercised over whether or not these punishments were ever carried out. It is considered today most unlikely that these types of punishments, or talionic punishment in general, were ever

---

<sup>377</sup>Ibid., section 195.

put into practice in the ancient Near East.<sup>378</sup> What is important here is the severity accorded these offenses in the light of other offenses listed in the same legal corpus. It is most significant that in both cases the assault is against a parent. Assault against another person would subject the minor to a lesser penalty. In Mesopotamian law a minor striking someone other than his parent would not have his hand cut off; depending on his status he would be fined or flogged.<sup>379</sup> Likewise, in ancient Israel he would be fined and not subject to the death penalty (Exod. 21:18-19). Thus we have a situation where striking a non-parent makes one subject to regular criminal law, but striking a parent makes one subject to a 'juvenile delinquent' law which carries a more severe penalty."<sup>380</sup>

Kidnapping was also a capital offense (v. 16; 20:15; Gen. 37:28) as was cursing (dishonoring) one's parents (v. 17; cf. 20:12). Verse 15 deals with a criminal offense, but verse 17 describes a civil offense (cf. Lev. 20:9; Deut. 27:16; Prov. 20:20; 30:11). Marcus went on to distinguish this type of offense as follows.

"Turning now to non-criminal acts, civil or status offenses, we review the salient points of the modern definition of a juvenile delinquent as one who is incorrigible, ungovernable, or habitually disobedient. The operative word in most modern definitions is 'habitual.' An isolated occurrence does not make a child delinquent. Note that the New York State definition speaks of the child as being 'habitually disobedient,' and the California one terms the delinquent as one who 'habitually refuses to obey.' We shall see that a number of ancient Near Eastern legal texts make this distinction as well. This is important because it enables us to distinguish what is clearly delinquency from what is only what we call 'generation gap' disagreements. The ancients were well aware of this generation gap between parents and children."<sup>381</sup>

All of these crimes worthy of death (in vv. 12-17) were serious in God's eyes. They either violated a basic right of a human being created in God's image or were expressions of rebellion against God's revealed authority in the home, the basic unit of society.

<sup>378</sup>*Encyclopaedia Judaica*, s.v. "Cuneiform Law," by J. Finkelstein, 16:1505i.

<sup>379</sup>Code of Hammurabi, sections 202-4.

<sup>380</sup>David Marcus, "Juvenile Delinquency in the Bible and the Ancient Near East," *Journal of the Ancient Near Eastern Society of Columbia University* 13 (1981):32-34.

<sup>381</sup>*Ibid.*, pp. 35-36. For an evaluation of modern American penological philosophies in the light of the Mosaic Law, see Gary R. Williams, "The Purpose of Penology in the Mosaic Law and Today," *Bibliotheca Sacra* 133:529 (January-March 1976):42-55.

"Life, in essence, is the property of God; the possession of it is leased to human beings for a number of years. This lease can be extended or contracted in accordance with God's will. (Cf. 1 Kings 21:27-29; 2 Kings 20:1-6; Job 1:12-19.) When a man arrogates to himself the right of ownership in the life of human beings and interferes with the right of enjoyment of life by taking it away—that is, killing it—he has violated one of the essential laws of God and therefore forfeits his own right to the possession of life."<sup>382</sup>

### **Bodily injuries 21:18-32**

Moses cited five cases in this section, as was true in the preceding one (vv. 12-17).

- 21:18-19      The Torah made no distinction in the penalty an aggressor paid because of his intent (vv. 18-28). The inferior Hammurabi Code did by permitting the assailant to pay less damage if he claimed no intent to cause injury.<sup>383</sup>
- 21:20-21      As other people, slaves also enjoyed protection from murderers (v. 20; cf. v. 12). However the slave owner likewise experienced protection from execution if his punishment of a slave was not the direct cause of the slave's death. In this case the law regarded the loss of the slave as sufficient punishment of the master (v. 21).
- 21:22          Manslaughter of an unborn child carried a fine (v. 22). The reason seems to have rested on two assumptions. First, accidental killing is not as serious a crime as deliberate killing. Second, a fetus, though a human life, does not have the same status as a self-sufficient human being.<sup>384</sup>

"The most significant thing about abortion legislation in Biblical law is that there was none. It was so unthinkable that an Israelite woman should desire an abortion that there was no need to mention this offense in the criminal code."<sup>385</sup>

Pro-abortion advocates frequently appeal to Exodus 21:22 to support their claim that a fetus is not a person and, therefore, abortion is not murder.

---

<sup>382</sup>Davis, p. 221.

<sup>383</sup>Code of Hammurabi, section 206.

<sup>384</sup>See Sandra Lubarsky, "Judaism and the Justification of Abortion for Non-Medical Reasons," *Journal of Reform Judaism* 31:4 (Fall 1984):1-13, which contains helpful information on the rabbinic teaching on abortion, though the author's conclusion, ". . . Judaism not only permits abortions for medical reasons, but also supports abortion for non-medical reasons" (p. 12), contradicts the spirit of Old Testament teaching.

<sup>385</sup>Meredith Kline, "Lex Talionis and the Human Fetus," *Simon Greenleaf Law Review* 5 (1985-86):75. See also Bruce K. Waltke, "Reflections from the Old Testament on Abortion," *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society* 19:1 (Winter 1976):3-13; and Robert N. Congdon, "Exodus 21:22-25 and the Abortion Debate," *Bibliotheca Sacra* 146:582 (April-June 1989):132-47.

"In other words, if you cause the death of the fetus, you merely pay a fine; if you cause the death of the woman, you lose your own life. Thus the Bible clearly shows that a fetus is *not* considered a person. If the fetus were considered to be a person, then the penalty for killing it would be the same as for killing the woman—death. Abortion, then, is *not* murder."<sup>386</sup>

However other Scriptures present the fetus as a person, a real human being (Job 10:8-12; 15:14; Ps. 51:5; 58:3; 139:13-16; Eccles. 11:5; Jer. 1:5; Gal. 1:15). This was the prevailing opinion in the ancient Near East as well.<sup>387</sup>

In contrast to other ancient Near Eastern law codes, the Torah made no differentiation on the basis of the woman's social class. It treated all equally. Also only the man who caused the injury was liable, not other members of his family who could suffer punishment for his offense and often did in other ancient Near Eastern societies. Principles explained elsewhere in the Torah determined the penalty the guilty party had to pay.<sup>388</sup>

21:23-25

God intended the "eye for eye" provision to limit punishment rather than giving free reign to it. The law of retaliation (Latin *lex talionis*) became common in the ancient Near East. It sought to control the tendency of someone who had only suffered a minor injury to take major revenge. For example, a man might kill the person who beat up his brother (cf. Gen. 4:23). God forbade such excessive vengeance among His people and limited them so that they should only exact equal payment for offenses committed against them and no more.

"This law of the talion, for a long time thought to be a more primitive kind of penalty, the reflection of a barbaric law form, has been shown by more recent comparative studies to be a later development, designed to remedy the inevitable abuses made possible by monetary payment for physical injury."<sup>389</sup>

---

<sup>386</sup>Graham Spurgeon, "Is Abortion Murder?" in *The Religious Case for Abortion*, p. 16. For the same view, see also Shalom Paul, *Studies in the Book of the Covenant in the Light of Cuneiform and Biblical Law*, p. 71; Lloyd Kalland, "Fetal Life," *Eternity*, February 1971, p. 24; and Dolores E. Dunnett, "Evangelicals and Abortion," *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society* 33:2 (June 1990):217.

<sup>387</sup>See the excellent discussion by Russell Fuller, "Exodus 21:22-23: The Miscarriage Interpretation and the Personhood of the Fetus," *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society* 37:2 (June 1992):169-84. Fuller also evaluated and rejected the popular evangelical view that this verse does not refer to a miscarriage but to a premature birth.

<sup>388</sup>See Stanley Isser, "Two Traditions: The Law of Exodus 21:22-23 Revisited," *Catholic Biblical Quarterly* 52:1 (January 1990):30-45, for some ancient abortion laws and the views of Jewish rabbis and translators on this passage.

<sup>389</sup>Durham, p. 324.

"According to Num. xxxv 31 it is only from a willful murderer that it is forbidden to accept ransom [payment in place of punishment]; this implies that in all other instances the taking of a ransom is permitted. . . .

"This being so, the meaning here in our paragraph of the expression *life for life* [v. 23] is that the one who hurts the woman accidentally shall be obliged to pay her husband the value of her life if she dies, and of her children if they die."<sup>390</sup>

21:26-27 In contrast to verse 27, the Code of Hammurabi prescribed that in such a case the offender had to pay the slave's master half the price of the slave.<sup>391</sup> If a master blinded his own slave, this code required no penalty. The Torah shows greater concern for the slave. This law would have discouraged masters from physically abusing their slaves.

21:28-32 The Hammurabi Code specified the death of the son of the owner of the ox if the ox killed the son of another man (v. 31).<sup>392</sup> The Torah required the owner's life or a ransom (v. 30). Note, too, that verses 31 and 32 value the lives of male and female slaves the same. The value of an adult slave under the Torah was 30 shekels of silver (cf. Matt. 26:15). Under the Code of Hammurabi it was 1/3 of a mina of silver (about 17 shekels).<sup>393</sup> The ox also died by stoning. In this way God taught His people that they should view even slaves as created in His image (cf. Gen. 9:5). The goring ox (vv. 28-32) is the typical example of death caused by cattle or domestic animals.

"The fate of the ox gives clear evidence of the theological principle of the subordination of the animal world to human sovereignty. That the fatal goring of one ox by another required only compensation shows the relative insignificance of the animal-to-animal relationship (vv. 35-36)."<sup>394</sup>

### Property damage 21:33—22:15

21:33-34 The pit represents a typical case of damage caused by an inanimate object or natural phenomenon. These specific cases doubtless served as precedents for other similar cases.

---

<sup>390</sup>Cassuto, p. 277.

<sup>391</sup>Code of Hammurabi, section 199.

<sup>392</sup>Ibid., section 230.

<sup>393</sup>Ibid., section 252.

<sup>394</sup>Merrill, "A Theology . . .," p. 43.

- 21:35-36 The law concerning a cattle fight is the same as one in the Laws of Eshnunna, a twentieth century B.C. Akkadian law code.<sup>395</sup> However the Torah differentiated between an ox that gored habitually and one that did not in the case of one ox goring another. Thus the Torah showed higher regard for the rights and responsibilities of individuals.
- 22:1-4 According to the Code of Hammurabi a thief should die if he could not repay what he had stolen<sup>396</sup> or if he stole by breaking in.<sup>397</sup> The Torah modified this law by annulling the death penalty and substituting the penalty of being sold into slavery, in the first case. In the second case, it annulled the death penalty and protected the life of the victim. Verses 1 and 4 of chapter 22 go together and deal with theft generally. The reason for the fivefold and fourfold penalties appears to be that the thief was taking the means of another person's livelihood.<sup>398</sup> Verses 2 and 3, which deal with breaking and entering, address a special type of theft. Perhaps the law assumed that the thief's intent was murder as well as theft if he broke in at night but only theft if he broke in in daylight. If so, we might assume that if his intentions turned out to have been otherwise, the law would deal with him accordingly. The text gives only the typical case. Perhaps the logic was that at night the victim's life was in greater danger so the law allowed him to use more force in resisting his assailant than in the daytime.
- 22:5-6 The fourth case involves damage due to grazing or burning. In the first instance (v. 5) the Torah required restitution from "the best" of the offender whereas the Code of Hammurabi required only restitution.<sup>399</sup> These two examples further illustrate God's respect for the rights of others.
- 22:7-15 Next we have four cases involving property held in custody. In the Hammurabi Code the penalty for losing or allowing a thief to steal what someone else had committed to one's trust was death<sup>400</sup> as was falsely accusing someone of this crime.<sup>401</sup> The Torah required only twofold payment in both situations (v. 9).

Second, if what someone entrusted to his neighbor for safekeeping perished by accident (vv. 10-13) the neighbor was not responsible to make restitution. This was the law under the Code of Hammurabi too.<sup>402</sup>

---

<sup>395</sup>Laws of Eshnunna, section 53.

<sup>396</sup>Code of Hammurabi, section 8.

<sup>397</sup>Ibid., section 21.

<sup>398</sup>Kaiser, "Exodus," p. 436.

<sup>399</sup>Code of Hammurabi, section 57.

<sup>400</sup>Ibid., section 9.

<sup>401</sup>Ibid., section 11.

<sup>402</sup>Ibid., sections 263-67.

Third, if someone borrowed something and it then suffered damage or it died (v. 14-15a) the borrower was responsible to make restitution. This was the procedure unless the owner (lender) was present when the damage or death took place. In that case the lender was responsible for his own property.

Fourth, if someone rented something and then damaged it or it died (v. 15b) the borrower was not responsible to make restitution since the fee he had paid covered his liability. The Code of Hammurabi specified no liability in either of these last two instances.<sup>403</sup>

### **Crimes against society 22:16-31**

22:16-17 Next we have a case of seduction. Here the girl is viewed as the property of her father. If a young couple had premarital sex, the young man had to marry the young woman and give his father-in-law the customary payment (i.e., a dowry) to do so. The girl's father could refuse this offer, however, in which case the boy would not get the girl but would still have to pay the dowry. This law pertained to situations in which seduction (persuasion), not rape, had resulted in intercourse. Other Torah passages that indicate that premarital sex is sinful include Genesis 2:24 and Deuteronomy 22:13-29. Moses did not comment on other similar situations here. Israel was evidently to function in harmony with previously existing law in these cases.<sup>404</sup>

"As many scholars recognize, the second half of the Book of the Covenant begins at Exodus 22:18 and the stipulations undergo a change in content to match what is clearly a change in form. The first half (Ex. 20:22—22:17) is fundamentally casuistic, whereas the latter half is not.<sup>405</sup> That is, the stipulations now are expressed as prescriptions or prohibitions with little or no reference to the penalty attached to violation in each case."<sup>406</sup>

22:18-20 God prohibited three more practices each of which brought the death penalty. All involve idolatry.

In the ancient world, people made a distinction between black magic and white magic. The former sought to harm someone, and the latter did not. The Hammurabi Code prohibited the former only,<sup>407</sup> but the Torah outlawed both without distinction. Magic constituted an attempt to

---

<sup>403</sup>Ibid., section 249.

<sup>404</sup>Cassuto, pp. 288-89.

<sup>405</sup>Childs, p. 477.

<sup>406</sup>Merrill, "A Theology . . .," p. 44.

<sup>407</sup>Code of Hamurabi, section 2.

override God's will. Probably Moses mentioned only the sorceress (v. 18) because women were particularly active in the practice of magic. Probably the law would have dealt with a sorcerer the same way.<sup>408</sup>

Having intercourse with animals (bestiality, v. 19) was something the Canaanites and Mesopotamians attributed to their gods and which they practiced in worshipping those gods. Whereas some law codes imposed the death penalty for having intercourse with certain animals, the Torah prohibited this practice completely.

The third ordinance (v. 20) prohibited offering any sacrifice to idols.

- 22:21-27 The next collection of laws deals with various forms of oppression. The first section deals with love for the poor and needy. While the Israelites were not to tolerate the idolatrous customs of foreigners, they were to manifest love toward the foreigners themselves as well as toward the poor and needy generally. The Israelites were to remember the oppression they had endured in Egypt and were to refrain from oppressing others. They were not only to refrain from doing evil but were to do positive good (vv. 26-27; cf. Matt. 5:44; Rom. 12:14).
- 22:28 This verse urges reverence toward God and the leaders of the community. Having dealt with proper behavior toward people on a lower social level, God also specified how to deal with those on higher levels of authority.
- 22:29-30 The law for firstfruits required the Israelites to offer several offerings to the Lord. Perhaps the purpose of allowing animals to stay with their mothers for the first seven days of their lives was to allow them to develop safely.<sup>409</sup> It may also have been to give natural relief to the dam by suckling its offspring.<sup>410</sup>
- 22:31 Animal flesh torn in the field before humans ate it was unsuitable for Israelite consumption. Not only might the animal have died from a communicable disease, but second-rate food like this was inappropriate for people set apart to a holy God.

### **Justice and neighborliness 23:1-9**

This section appeals for justice toward all people. The subject of the legislation now shifts from love for all to justice for all. The Israelites should treat all people justly, not only the rich but also the poor (v. 3), the enemy as well as the friend (v. 4). Jezebel later did to Naboth what verse 7 warns against (cf. 1 Kings 21:9-14).

---

<sup>408</sup>See Roy B. Zuck, "The Practice of Witchcraft in the Scriptures," *Bibliotheca Sacra* 128:512 (October-December 1971):352-60.

<sup>409</sup>Durham, p. 330.

<sup>410</sup>Kaiser, "Exodus," p. 440.

**Rest 23:10-12**

"Till now the text dealt with positive and negative precepts that are valid at all times; now we have a series of precepts that are to be observed at given times, commandments that apply to seasons that are specifically dedicated to the service of the Lord, and are intended to remind the Israelites of the covenant that the Lord made with them, and of the duty resting upon them to be faithful to this covenant."<sup>411</sup>

- 23:10-11 The people were to observe the sabbatical year (cf. Lev. 25:2-7; Deut. 15:1-3). The Israelites' failure to observe 70 sabbatical years resulted in God removing Israel from the Promised Land to Babylon for 70 years to give the land its rest (2 Chron. 36:20-21).
- 23:12 God intended Sabbath observance to give His people and even their laboring animals needed rest (v. 12).

**The reiteration of basic principles of worship 23:13-19**

- 23:13 This verse is a summary warning against idolatry (cf. 20:22-23).

"The continual return to the theme of idolatry throughout this section of the book is preparation and background for an appreciation of the incident of the golden calf (Ex 32)."<sup>412</sup>

- 23:14-17 All the male Israelites had to make a pilgrimage to the sanctuary (tabernacle) three times a year for the feasts of Unleavened Bread, Firstfruits (Weeks, Pentecost), and Ingathering (Booths, Tabernacles). Women and children would have normally accompanied the males. This requirement fostered the maintenance of the national and social unity of the 12 tribes as well as their spiritual unity.

- 23:18 "The first part of this verse has nothing to do with eating anything leavened. Rather it means that individual Israelites were not to kill the Passover lamb while leaven was still in their houses. The second half of the verse makes no reference to fat as such; but as the parallel verse in 34:25b says, the 'sacrifice from the Passover Feast' (here lit., 'sacrifice of my feast') shall not 'remain until morning' (cf. 12:10)."<sup>413</sup>

The "fat" means "the best part," here the whole sacrifice.

- 23:19 The commentators have accounted for the prohibition against boiling a kid (young lamb) in its mother's milk in many different ways. Some scholars

<sup>411</sup>Cassuto, p. 300.

<sup>412</sup>Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch . . .*, p. 293.

<sup>413</sup>Kaiser, "Exodus," p. 445.

believe it was the opposition to commingling life and death, a source of life and its product, or Israel and the nations, that was the basis for this prohibition (cf. Lev. 22:27-28; Deut. 22:6).<sup>414</sup> Another view is that it was a way of specifying that only weaned animals were acceptable as sacrifices (cf. 34:18-26).<sup>415</sup> The most popular explanation is that this was a pagan practice that showed disrespect for the God-given relationship between parent and offspring.<sup>416</sup> The Ras Shamra tablets have shown that boiling sacrificial kids in their mother's milk was a common ritual practice among the Canaanites.<sup>417</sup> This ordinance is the basis for the separation strict Jews make in their diet by not mixing dairy and meat products. Observant Jews even provide separate equipment and kitchens for the preparation of these dishes.

### **Yahweh's relation to Israel 23:20-33**

In this final part of the Book of the Covenant (20:22—23:33), God gave the Israelites promises and precepts relating to their conquest of the Promised Land. Suzerainty treaties normally concluded with an explanation of the benefits that would come to the vassals if they obeyed the king's commands and the difficulties they would experience if they disobeyed. That is characteristic of this section of the covenant, though the emphasis is positive.

"Similar opening [20:22-26] and closing remarks are also found in the codes of Hammurabi and Lipit-Istar."<sup>418</sup>

"Following the text of the covenant code Yahweh assures His people of His ongoing commitment. He had not brought them out of Egypt and made covenant with them only to forget them in the wilderness. He had promised to give them land, so now He speaks of the process by which they would enter the land and the circumstances they would face there (Ex. 23:20-33)."<sup>419</sup>

- 23:20-23      God stressed the importance of obedience in these verses. The angel referred to was undoubtedly the Angel of the Lord (cf. Josh. 5:13-15).
- 23:24-26      Moses stressed the worship of the true God as opposed to the idols of Canaan again. Note the repeated emphasis on obedience and worship also in verses 20-26.<sup>420</sup>

<sup>414</sup>Jacob Milgrom, "You Shall Not Boil a Kid in It's Mother's Milk," *Bible Review* 1:3 (Fall 1985):48-55; Merrill, in *The Old . . .*, p. 63.

<sup>415</sup>Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch . . .*, p. 294.

<sup>416</sup>E.g., Meyer, p. 270.

<sup>417</sup>See Charles F. Pfeiffer, *Ras Shamra and the Bible*. For other views, see Kaiser, "Exodus," p. 445.

<sup>418</sup>Cassuto, p. 305.

<sup>419</sup>Merrill, "A Theology . . .," p. 47.

<sup>420</sup>On the promise that God would give the Israelites good health, see my comments on 15:26.

23:27-28 God promised His people various provisions if they would be obedient. We should probably understand the hornets (v. 28) figuratively. There is no reference in the text to God using real hornets to drive out the Canaanites, but He did use other hornet-like forces (cf. Josh. 24:12).

"Perhaps 'the hornet' is a symbol of Egypt, just as Isaiah 7:18 uses the 'fly' and the 'bee' as symbols of Egypt and Assyria, respectively."<sup>421</sup>

23:29-30 God told the Israelites that they would not drive out all their enemies the first year after they entered the land (v. 29). They did not. However, Israel was less successful than she might have been due to incomplete obedience.

"'Little by little' does the work of God proceed through the individual soul. 'Little by little' do the conquests of the Cross win over the world. 'Little by little' is the unfolding purpose of Redemption made manifest to men and angels."<sup>422</sup>

23:31 God further promised a wide land area. It stretched from the Red Sea (probably the Gulf of Aqabah, the southeastern boundary) to the Mediterranean Sea (the western boundary). It also ran from the wilderness (probably the northeast edge of the Sinai wilderness, the southwest boundary) to the Euphrates River (the northeastern boundary; cf. Gen. 15:18). Some writers believed that this is a reference to the river that now forms the border between modern Lebanon and Syria.<sup>423</sup> Yet in the Hebrew Bible "the river" usually refers to the Euphrates. Israel did not occupy all of this territory due to her disobedience to God.

23:32-33 These verses contain a final warning. Israel was to make no covenants with the Canaanites or their gods because she already had a covenant with Yahweh. The Israelites failed here too (e.g., Josh 9:3-15).

"The Decalogue begins with the command that Israel have no god other than Yahweh. The Book of the Covenant begins (20:23) and ends (23:32-33) with that same command, and all that lies between that beginning and that ending is designed to assure its obedience."<sup>424</sup>

It is very important to observe that God conditioned obtaining all that He promised the Israelites as an inheritance on their obedience. They could only enter into it by obeying God. Their inheritance was something different from their salvation, which came to them

---

<sup>421</sup>Kaiser, "Exodus," p. 447.

<sup>422</sup>Meyer, pp. 281-82.

<sup>423</sup>E.g., Kaiser, "Exodus," p. 447.

<sup>424</sup>Durham, p. 337.

only by faith in God (Gen. 15:6; Exod. 12:13; 14:31). The New Testament likewise teaches that justification comes solely by faith in God, but only obedient Christians will obtain the full inheritance that God has promised us (cf. Heb. 3:12—4:14).<sup>425</sup>

### **5. The ratification of the Covenant 24:1-11**

"The great event in chapter 24 is the climax of the Book of Exodus."<sup>426</sup>

24:1-8 The remaining verses in this section contain God's directions to Moses personally. He, Aaron, Aaron's two eldest sons, and 70 of the elders of Israel were to ascend the mountain to worship God. God permitted only Moses to approach Him closely, however.

Moses first related the content of God's covenant with Israel orally, and the people submitted to it (v. 3). Then he wrote out God's words to preserve them permanently for the Israelites (v. 4). The altar he built memorialized this place as where God had revealed Himself to His people. The 12 pillars were probably not part of the altar but separate from it. They probably represented the permanent relationship of the 12 tribes with God that God established when He made this covenant.

"In the ceremony to be performed, the altar will represent the glory of the Lord, whilst the pillars will represent the tribes of Israel; the two contrasting parties will stand facing each other."<sup>427</sup>

The 12 pillars may also have served as memorial standing stones to commemorate the occasion (cf. Gen. 31:45).<sup>428</sup> The young men (v. 5) were probably assistants to Moses chosen for this special occasion to serve as priests (cf. 19:22, 24).

"In the blood sprinkled on the altar [v. 6], the natural life of the people was given up to God, as a life that had passed through death, to be pervaded by His grace; and then through the sprinkling upon the people [v. 8] it was restored to them again, as a life renewed by the grace of God. In this way the blood not only became a bond of union between Jehovah and His people, but by the blood of the covenant, it became a vital power, holy and divine, uniting Israel and its God; and the sprinkling of the people with this blood was an actual renewal of life, a transposition of Israel into the kingdom of God, in which it

<sup>425</sup>For a good explanation of the Old and New Testament teaching on the subject of the believer's inheritance, see Joseph C. Dillow, *The Reign of the Servant Kings*, pp. 43-110.

<sup>426</sup>Ramm, p. 139.

<sup>427</sup>Cassuto, p. 311.

<sup>428</sup>John W. Hilber, "Theology of Worship in Exodus 24," *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society* 39:2 (June 1996):181.

was filled with the powers of God's spirit of grace, and sanctified into a kingdom of priests, a holy nation of Jehovah (19:6)."<sup>429</sup>

"The throwing of half of the blood of the offerings against the altar, which represented the Lord, and half on the people, or that which represented them, signifies a joining together of the two contracting parties (*communio*), and symbolized the execution of the deed of covenant between them.

"Between one blood-throwing and the other, the content of the covenant was finally and solemnly ratified by Moses' reading from the Book of the Covenant and by the people's expression of consent."<sup>430</sup>

This ritual constituted the formal ratification of the Mosaic Covenant by which Yahweh adopted Israel as His "son" (cf. Gen. 15). The parallel with the inauguration of the New Covenant is striking (cf. Matt. 26:28; 1 Cor. 11:25).

"In all such ceremonies the oath of obedience [v. 7] implied the participants' willingness to suffer the fate of the sacrificed animals if the covenant stipulations were violated by those who took the oath."<sup>431</sup>

"Virtually every sovereign-vassal treaty incorporated a list of deities before whom the solemn oaths of mutual fidelity were sworn. These 'witnesses' could not, of course, be invoked in the case of the biblical covenants, for there were not gods but Yahweh and no higher powers to whom appeal could be made in the event of covenant violation. The counterpart of this is not lacking, however, for the ceremony of covenant-making described in Exodus 24 clearly includes 'witnesses' to the transaction. These are in the form of the altar, which represented Yahweh, and the twelve pillars, which represented the twelve tribes. Although there is no explicit word to the effect that these objects were witnesses as well as representations, the use of inanimate objects in that capacity elsewhere certainly allows for that possibility here."<sup>432</sup>

---

<sup>429</sup>Keil and Delitzsch, 2:158.

<sup>430</sup>Cassuto, p. 312.

<sup>431</sup>Youngblood, p. 110.

<sup>432</sup>Merrill, "A Theology . . .," pp. 34-35. Cf. Deut. 4:26; 30:19; 31:28. See also Kline, *The Treaty . . .*, p. 15.

"This is the covenant meal, the peace offering, that they are eating there on the mountain. To eat from the sacrifice meant that they were at peace with God, in covenant with him. Likewise, in the new covenant believers draw near to God on the basis of sacrifice, and eat of the sacrifice because they are at peace with him, and in Christ they see the Godhead revealed."<sup>433</sup>

There is some disagreement among the commentators about the meaning of "the Book of the Covenant" (v. 7). Most take it to mean the "Bill of Rights" that God had just given (20:22—23:33).<sup>434</sup> Some feel it included "the whole corpus of Sinai laws."<sup>435</sup> Others hold that ". . . it denotes a short general document, a kind of testimony and memorial to the making of the covenant."<sup>436</sup> I prefer the view that it refers to the covenant stipulations God had made known to the Israelites at this time including the Decalogue and the "Bill of Rights." This seems most consistent with other references to this book in the text.<sup>437</sup>

24:9-11 The ratification ceremony concluded with a meal (vv. 9-11), not a picnic lunch but a sacrificial meal (v. 5).

"They ate and drank' describes a covenant meal celebrating the sealing of the covenant described in vv. 3-8."<sup>438</sup>

We must understand the statement that the leaders of Israel saw God (v. 10) in the light of other passages (33:20-23; Isa. 6:1; John 1:18). Perhaps they only saw His feet or, more exactly, a representation of part of God in human form (cf. Isa. 6:1; Rev. 4:2, 6). The pavement of clear sapphire contributed to the vision of God as the supra-terrestrial sovereign (cf. Ezek. 1:22; Rev. 4:6; 12:2).

". . . what Moses and his companions experience is a theophany of the Presence of God, not a vision of his person, and what they see, bowed before even that awesome reality, is what could be seen from a position of obeisant prostration, the surface on which his Presence offered itself. . . . The reference in v 10 may therefore be a double one, calling up the deep dark blue of an endless sky and the building materials of legendary divine dwelling-places."<sup>439</sup>

---

<sup>433</sup>The NET Bible note on 24:11.

<sup>434</sup>Wolf, p. 153.

<sup>435</sup>Childs, p. 506; Johnson, p. 74.

<sup>436</sup>Cassuto, p. 312.

<sup>437</sup>See Kaiser, "Exodus," p. 449.

<sup>438</sup>Ibid., p. 450.

<sup>439</sup>Durham, p. 344.

God in mercy did not consume the sinners before Him. Rather He allowed them to eat in His presence thus symbolizing the fact that He was taking on responsibility for their safety and welfare (cf. Gen. 31:44-46).<sup>440</sup>

"We have argued that the awkward surface structure of the narrative [in chapters 19—24], which results in the non-linear temporal ordering of events, can be explained when one takes into account the sequence structure of the narrative, particularly the use of the literary device called resumptive repetition. As a result of this literary device we have demonstrated that the narrative contains two different perspectives of the theophany. First, there is the perspective of Yahweh which emphasizes the preparation and execution of the covenant as well as highlighting the holiness of God, which is a key to understanding the relationship that exists between Yahweh and His people. Second, there is the perspective of the people, which is elaborated upon in the two resumptive narratives in 20, 18-21 and 24, 1-8. The first resumptive narrative in 20, 18-21, which elaborates in detail the fear of the people, serves as a preface and introduction to the Decalogue and Covenant Code. In addition, it also acts as a causal link between the fear of the people and their sinful acts below the mountain in Exod 32. The second resumptive narrative in 24, 1-8 elaborates in detail the ratification of the covenant and also leads into the subsequent ascent of Moses to the mountain where he receives the rest of God's regulations."<sup>441</sup>

### **C. DIRECTIONS REGARDING GOD'S DWELLING AMONG HIS PEOPLE 24:12—31:18**

Having given directions clarifying Israel's obedience in the Book of the Covenant (20:22-23:33), God now summoned Moses up into the mountain again to receive His directions regarding Israel's worship. The Book of the Covenant specified how the Israelites were to live with one another, but the tabernacle showed them how God wanted them to worship Him.<sup>442</sup>

"The establishment of a covenant relationship necessitated a means whereby the vassal party could regularly appear before the Great King to render his accountability. In normal historical relationships of this kind between mere men, some sort of intercession was frequently mandatory and, in any case, a strict protocol had to be adhered to.<sup>443</sup> How much more must this be required in the case of a sinful people such as Israel, who must, notwithstanding, communicate with and give account to an infinitely transcendent and holy God."<sup>444</sup>

<sup>440</sup>See Livingston, pp. 157-62.

<sup>441</sup>G. C. Chirichigno, "The Narrative Structure of Exod. 19-24," *Biblica* 68:4 (1987):478-79.

<sup>442</sup>Cf. Davis, p. 192.

<sup>443</sup>For Hittite practice, see O. R. Gurney, *The Hittites*, pp. 74-75.

<sup>444</sup>Merrill, "A Theology . . .," pp. 48-49.

Why did Moses record God's instructions for the tabernacle before the people sinned by making the golden calf? It was, after all, the golden calf incident that led to the giving of the priestly laws.

". . . according to the logic of the narrative, it was Israel's fear that had created the need for a safe approach to God, that is, one in which the people as such were kept at a distance and a mediator was allowed to represent them. It was precisely for this reason that the tabernacle was given to Israel."<sup>445</sup>

### **1. The revelation of the directions 24:12-18**

Moses stayed in the heights of the mountain 40 days and nights while God gave him the stone tablets of the law and all the details of the tabernacle and its worship. Thus Moses was completely dependent on God. Now that Israel had entered into a blood covenant with God, God purposed to dwell among His people (cf. John 1:14). Similarly God now dwells among Christians by His Holy Spirit since Jesus Christ has ratified the New Covenant by shedding His blood.

The spectacular vision of the glory of God on the mountain "like a consuming fire" (v. 17) should have given the Israelites greater respect for God's revelation than they demonstrated later (cf. 32:1-8). There were three symbols of God's glory: the cloud, the fire, and the voice.

### **2. Contributions for the construction of the sanctuary 25:1-9**

"Only voluntary gifts were acceptable as materials for the Lord's house (25:2; 35:3, 21-22, 29), since love rather than compulsion is the basis of all truly biblical giving (2 Cor. 9:7)."<sup>446</sup>

Moses usually employed one of four different terms to describe the tabernacle each of which emphasizes one of its purposes, though other names also appear.

1. Sanctuary (25:8) means "place of holiness" and stresses the transcendence of Israel's God as an exalted being different from His people. However this verse also states that such a God would "dwell among" His people.<sup>447</sup>
2. Tabernacle (25:9) means "dwelling place" and emphasizes God's purpose of abiding near His people.

"Just as they lived in tents, so God would condescend to 'dwell' in a tent."<sup>448</sup>

---

<sup>445</sup>Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch . . .*, p. 58.

<sup>446</sup>Youngblood, p. 113.

<sup>447</sup>See Angel Manuel Rodriguez, "Sanctuary Theology in the Book of Exodus," *Andrews University Seminary Studies* 24:2 (Summer 1986):127-45.

<sup>448</sup>Youngblood, p. 114.

3. Tent of Meeting (26:36; 29:42-43; 35:21) also stresses the imminence of God. God met with Moses and the Israelites in this tent. The verb translated "meeting" means a deliberate prearranged rendezvous rather than a casual accidental meeting. Some scholars believe that the tent of meeting was a structure different from the tabernacle and that it was always outside the camp of Israel.<sup>449</sup>
4. Tabernacle (or Tent) of Testimony (38:21; Num. 9:15; 17:7, 8) indicates that the structure was the repository of the Law. Moses sometimes referred to the ark of the covenant as the "ark of the testimony" (25:22) that contained the "two tablets of the testimony" (31:18) on which were the Ten Commandments. The Ten Commandments are the "testimony." They were the essential stipulations of the Mosaic Covenant, the heart of the relationship between God and His people.

God designed the tabernacle structure and all its furnishings to teach the Israelites about Himself and how they as sinners could have a relationship with Him.

"The thoughts of God concerning salvation and His kingdom, which the earthly building was to embody and display, were visibly set forth in the pattern shown [to Moses]."<sup>450</sup>

"The tabernacle also provided a prophetic prefigurement of the redemptive program of God as focused in Jesus Christ. . . . [It] was a remarkable picture of the high priestly work of Christ both here on earth and His eternal work in the heavens."<sup>451</sup>

"Probably the conception of the *tabhnith*, the 'model' (Exodus 25:9), also goes back ultimately to the idea that the earthly sanctuary is the counterpart of the heavenly dwelling of a deity."<sup>452</sup>

### **3. The tabernacle furnishings 25:10-40**

One writer identified three major problems the interpreter faces as he or she seeks to understand God's revelation concerning the tabernacle.<sup>453</sup>

1. What was the length of the cubit, the standard measure of length? This is a problem because various nations had different lengths for their cubits. A cubit was usually the distance between the elbow and the middle fingertip. The length ranged from about 17 inches to 21 inches, but there is good reason to believe the Hebrew cubit at this time was 17.5 inches or about one and a half feet.

---

<sup>449</sup>E.g., Eugene H. Merrill, *Deuteronomy*, p. 401.

<sup>450</sup>Keil and Delitzsch, 2:167.

<sup>451</sup>Davis, pp. 245-56.

<sup>452</sup>Frank M. Cross Jr., "The Tabernacle," *Biblical Archaeologist* 10:3 (September 1947):62. For a good introduction to the background of the tabernacle, see G. Ernest Wright, "The Significance of the Temple in the Ancient Near East," *Biblical Archaeologist* 7:4 (December 1944):65-77. Cf. Exod. 25:40; Heb. 8:5.

<sup>453</sup>Davis, pp. 246-51.

2. What about the information omitted in the text? Anyone who has tried to make a model or detailed drawing of the tabernacle and its furnishings has experienced frustration. The data given in the text is incomplete. Undoubtedly God revealed all the details to Moses. However, He has preserved only those details necessary for our understanding of the fundamental significance and functioning of the tabernacle in Scripture.
3. What was the exact shape of the tabernacle? The text does not enable us to know for certain if it had a flat roof or a gabled roof formed by a ridgepole. Both possibilities have problems connected with them, but the flat roof design seems more probable all things considered. A gabled roof would increase the measurement of the roof beyond the width of 15 feet so the curtains over the roof and sides would not fully cover the sides.

Another problem is the extent of typological teaching that God intended. A "type" is a divinely intended illustration.<sup>454</sup> Thus all types are illustrations, but not all illustrations are types. How much detail did God intend to illustrate His character and relationship with His people?

We know the major aspects of the tabernacle and its furnishings are types because the New Testament writers identified them as such (Heb. 3:4-5; 8:5; 9:8-9, 23-24; 10:20). However the amount of detail Moses preserved and the obvious correspondence of certain details not identified as types have led many commentators to conclude that God intended these details to be instructive too. Some commentators have taken this teaching to extend to the numbers and colors used that, in some cases in scriptural usage, do have symbolic significance. Some commentators have taken this too far in the judgment of other students of Exodus.

I prefer a cautious approach myself. It seems to me that there are many illustrations of New Testament truth in the Old Testament. This seems clear in view of the amount of detail God preserved here. It also seems clear since the illustrative significance of some features of the tabernacle is so obvious even though the New Testament does not identify them as types. An extremely conservative approach would be to identify as types only those things that the New Testament calls types (Gr. *typos*, cf. *antitypos*). These would include Adam (Rom. 5:14), the wilderness wanderings of Israel (1 Cor. 10:6, 11), the holy place in the tabernacle and temple (Heb. 9:24), and the flood in Noah's day (1 Pet. 3:21). We could refer to other foreshadowings simply as illustrations.<sup>455</sup>

Josephus, following Philo, interpreted the tabernacle, its furniture, and the priests' garments symbolically. He wrote that the seven branches of the lampstand represent the courses of the planets. The colors of the curtains and clothing represent the four elements

---

<sup>454</sup>Charles C. Ryrie, *The Holy Spirit*, p. 23.

<sup>455</sup>See Paul Lee Tan, *Principles of Literal Interpretation of the Bible*, pp. 36-39. Examples of extensive typological interpretation are Edward Dennett, *Typical Teachings of Genesis*; C. H. Mackintosh, *Notes on the Pentateuch*, vols. 3-5; A. J. Pollock, *The Tabernacle's Typical Teaching*; Samuel Ridout, *Lectures on the Tabernacle*; and H. W. Soltau, *The Tabernacle, the Priesthood and the Offerings*.

(earth, water, air, and fire). The two shoulder stones stand for the sun and moon. The 12 breastplate stones represent the 12 months or the 12 signs of the Greek zodiac.<sup>456</sup> His suggestions do not seem to be the best interpretations of the significance of these things.

Note that the order in which Moses described the things associated with the tabernacle in the text is not what one would normally expect. For example, we would expect that after the description of the altar of burnt offerings we would have a description of the laver. The altar of burnt offerings was the major piece of furniture in the courtyard and the first one the Israelite would meet as he entered the courtyard. The laver was the second most prominent item. It would catch the Israelite's eye next. It was also the object between the altar and the tabernacle. However instead we read about the altar of burnt offerings, then the priestly vestments, then the consecration of Aaron, and then the laver. This order is due to the two emphases in the revelation. First, Moses described things that primarily manifest God, and second, things dealing with His people's fellowship with God. The author described first things in the holy of holies where God dwelt, then things in the holy place, then things in the courtyard. This order focuses attention on the presence of Yahweh among His people, which was the most important feature of Israel's life. The tabernacle itself also reflects the importance of Yahweh's presence at the center of His people.

"The tabernacle was built on a ratio of 2:1 and on a radiating decrease value of metal: gold, silver, bronze, from the center [where God dwelt] to the outer edges."<sup>457</sup>

The materials that the Israelites were to use in the construction of the tabernacle and its worship were the finest and rarest available. This reflected the fact that nothing but the best was appropriate for response to Yahweh. What was at the center of priestly concern was not a building or a ritual but the Lord Himself, present as a gift to His people.<sup>458</sup>

### **The ark of the covenant 25:10-22**

The ark was the throne of Yahweh where He dwelt in a localized way and met with the Israelites through their high priest. It was the seat of His sovereignty but also the place where He met with His people (v. 22). This is why directions for its construction come first. The testimony (Ten Commandments, vv. 16, 22) lay inside the ark, which was a hollow box. God's dwelling among His people and His relationship with them thus quite literally rested on the Ten Commandments. The mercy seat (v. 17) was the removable "lid" of this box and was solid gold. It was there that the high priest offered sacrificial blood once a year to atone for (cover) the sins of the Israelites as a nation. This offering made propitiation (satisfaction) for their sins for one year (cf. Lev. 16).

The Greek word used to translate "mercy seat" here in the Septuagint (*hilasterion*) is another form of the word used to describe Jesus Christ as our propitiation in 1 John 2:2

---

<sup>456</sup>Josephus, 3:7:7.

<sup>457</sup>Livingston, p. 178.

<sup>458</sup>Durham, p. 355.

(*hilasmos*). The mercy seat was for the Israelites temporarily what Jesus Christ is for all people permanently: the place where God found satisfaction.

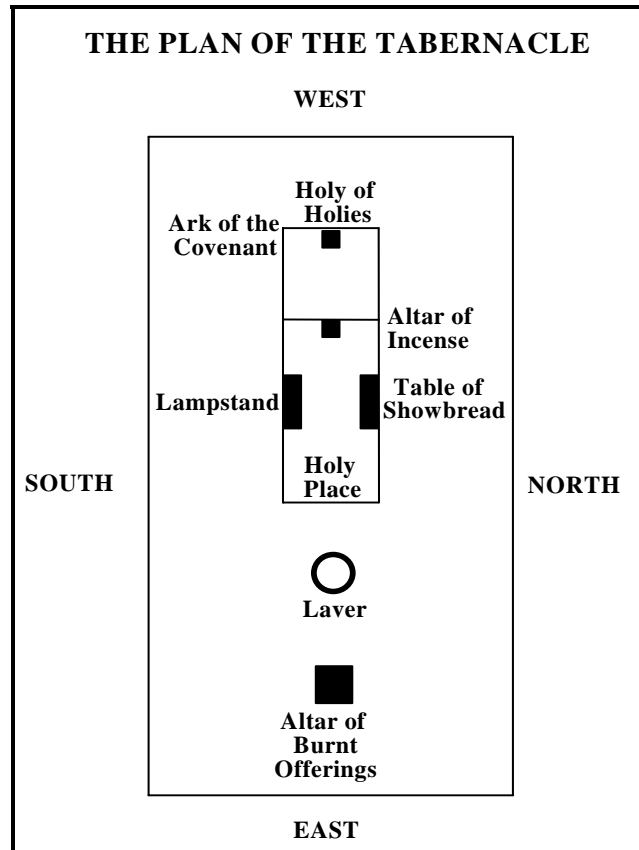
"It [mercy] is a sweet word! A seat of mercy, baptised [*sic*] in mercy, from which mercy flows forth. Not wrath, not judgment, not indignation, but mercy is pouring forth from its original fountain in the heart of God."<sup>459</sup>

The cherubim (v. 18) were angels who "apparently have to do with the holiness of God as violated by sin."<sup>460</sup> They may have looked like winged human-headed lions.<sup>461</sup> Josephus wrote that Moses saw these creatures around God's throne when he was on Mt. Sinai.<sup>462</sup>

"The cherubim are connected with the throne as its guardians and/or bearers. In other cultures cherubim are minor deities protective of palaces and temple; in Israel they symbolized angelic guardians of the invisible throne of God."<sup>463</sup>

### The table of showbread 25:23-30

This piece of furniture stood on the north side of the holy place, the right side as the priest entered from the courtyard. The priests placed twelve loaves (large pieces) of unleavened<sup>464</sup> bread in two rows<sup>465</sup> or piles<sup>466</sup> on this table where they remained for seven days. They substituted twelve fresh loaves for the old bread each Sabbath (Lev. 24:5-8). The term "bread of the Presence" (v. 30) means these loaves lay before God's presence in the tabernacle. The



<sup>459</sup>Meyer, p. 307.

<sup>460</sup>*Unger's Bible Dictionary*, s.v. "Cherub," by Merrill F. Unger, p. 192.

<sup>461</sup>Youngblood, p. 122; cf. Kaiser, "Exodus," p. 455.

<sup>462</sup>Josephus, 3:6:5. See John T. Bunn, "The Ark of the Covenant," *Biblical Illustrator* 9:4 (Summer 1983):50-53. Geoffrey Kind, "Where Is the Ark of the Covenant?" *Prophetic Witness* 8:2 (February 1984):9-10, suggested several possible answers to the title question. See also A. H. Tolhurst, "Whatever Happened to the Ark?" *Ministry* (June 1984), pp. 13-15.

<sup>463</sup>Waltke, *An Old . . .*, p. 460.

<sup>464</sup>Josephus, 3:6:5.

<sup>465</sup>William L. Lane, *Hebrews 9-13*, p. 220.

<sup>466</sup>Bill Mitchell, "Leviticus 24:6: The bread of the presence—rows or piles?" *The Bible Translator* 33:4 (October 1982):447-48.

Israelites did not offer this food for Yahweh to eat, as the pagans offered food to their gods.<sup>467</sup>

They did so "as a symbol of the spiritual food which Israel was to prepare (John 6:27; cf. 4:32, 34), a figurative representation of the calling it had received from God."<sup>468</sup>

"The twelve loaves constituted a perpetual thank offering to God from the twelve tribes for the blessings that they received from Him day by day."<sup>469</sup>

"By its opulence as by the containers and the food and drink placed continuously upon it and periodically renewed, this Table announces: 'He is here,' and there as one who gives sustenance."<sup>470</sup>

Perhaps the bread signified both God's provisions and Israel's vocation. Israel was to be a source of spiritual food for the world (19:5-6).

". . . the table and the bread of the Presence have been taken as a type of the church which stands in Christ's (the ark) presence."<sup>471</sup>

### **The lampstand 25:31-40**

This piece of furniture was probably similar in size to the table of showbread (v. 39). It stood opposite that table in the holy place against the south (left) wall. It weighed about 75 pounds. The tabernacle craftsmen fashioned it in the form of a stylized plant or tree. It connoted life and fertility.

"The signification of the seven-armed candlestick is apparent from its purpose, viz. to carry seven lamps, which were trimmed and filled with oil every morning, and lighted every evening, and were to burn throughout the night (chap. xxvii. 20, 21, xxx. 7, 8; Lev. xxiv. 3, 4). As the Israelites were to prepare spiritual food in the shew-bread in the presence of Jehovah, and to offer continually the fruit of their labour in the field of the kingdom of God, as a spiritual offering to the Lord; so also were they to present themselves continually to Jehovah in the burning lamps, as the vehicles and media of light, as a nation letting its light shine in the darkness of this world (cf. Matt. v. 14, 16; Luke xii. 35; Phil. ii. 15). The oil, through which the lamps burned and shone, was, according to its peculiar virtue in imparting strength to the body and restoring vital power, a representation of the Godlike spirit, the source of all the vital power of man; whilst the oil, as offered by the congregation of Israel, and devoted

---

<sup>467</sup>Kaiser, "Exodus," p. 456.

<sup>468</sup>Keil and Delitzsch, 2:171.

<sup>469</sup>Davis, p. 255.

<sup>470</sup>Durham, p. 362.

<sup>471</sup>Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch . . .*, p. 302.

to sacred purposes according to the command of God, is throughout the Scriptures a symbol of the Spirit of God, by which the congregation of God was filled with higher light and life. By the power of this Spirit, Israel, in covenant with the Lord, was to let its light shine, the light of its knowledge of God and spiritual illumination, before all the nations of the earth. In its *seven* arms the stamp of the covenant relationship was impressed upon the candlestick; and the almond-blossom with which it was ornamented represented the seasonable offering of the flowers and fruits of the Spirit, the almond-tree deriving its name . . . from the fact that it is the earliest of all the trees in both its blossom and its fruit (cf. Jer. 1:11, 12). The symbolic character of the candlestick is clearly indicated in the Scriptures. The prophet Zechariah (chap. 4) sees a golden candlestick with seven lamps and two olive-trees, one on either side, from which the oil-vessel is supplied; and the angel who is talking with him informs him that the olive-trees are the two sons of oil, that is to say, the representatives of the kingdom and priesthood, the divinely appointed organs through which the Spirit of God was communicated to the covenant nation. And in Rev. 1:20, the seven churches, which represent the new people of God, i.e., the Christian Church, are shown to the holy seer in the form of seven candlesticks standing before the throne of God."<sup>472</sup>

"In company with the Table attesting Yahweh's Presence in bounty and the Ark attesting Yahweh's Presence in mercy and revelation, the Lampstand symbolized Yahweh's Presence in perpetual wakefulness, through the reminder of the almond tree and the continual brightness of the living fire (cf. Num 17:16-26 [17:1-11]). The watcher over Israel never nodded, much less slept (Ps 121:4)."<sup>473</sup>

Like the showbread, the burning lamps may have symbolized both the character of God and the calling of Israel. The seven-branched lampstand (*menorah*) has been and is a popular symbol of Judaism and Israel even today around the world. A bas relief of the lampstand that stood in Herod's Temple is still visible on an inside panel on the Arch of Titus that stands in Rome. The Romans built this arch following Titus' destruction of Jerusalem in A.D. 70.

"The lampstand is commonly taken to be a type of Christ, usually on the basis of Revelation 1:4 [cf. vv. 12-13]. It has also been taken as a symbolic image of the Law."<sup>474</sup>

#### **4. The tabernacle structure ch. 26**

The tabernacle walls consisted of rigid supports with curtains hung over the boards. These draperies also evidently formed its ceiling. Most commentators believe that the

<sup>472</sup>Keil and Delitzsch, 2:174-75.

<sup>473</sup>Durham, p. 365.

<sup>474</sup>Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch . . .*, p. 302.

tabernacle was a single structure, but a few believe it consisted of three separate structures one on top of the other. These structures were the tabernacle proper, a tent over it made of goat hair, and another tent of skins that covered both of these structures.<sup>475</sup>

The tabernacle as a whole illustrates four different things according to Scripture. It represents the heavens where God dwells and from which He manifests Himself (Heb. 4:14; 9:23-24), the work of Christ (John 2:19-21; Heb. 3:3-4; 8:2; 9:11-12), the individual believer (1 Cor. 6:19), and the church (1 Tim. 3:15; Heb. 3:6; 10:21).

### **The curtains 26:1-14**

The extent to which these curtains were visible from inside the tabernacle is not clear in the text and has been the subject of debate by commentators. They were of four colors that some writers have interpreted as having symbolic significance on the basis of other biblical references to and uses of these colors. The colors were white (holiness), blue (heavenly origin and character), purple (royal glory), and crimson (blood and vigorous life). Blue was also the color of garments that people of high social standing wore (1 Sam. 18:4; 24:4).

"Woven into the fabric of the curtains were images of cherubim, apparently intended to recall the theme of 'paradise lost' by alluding to the cherubim which guarded the 'Tree of Life' in Genesis 3:24."<sup>476</sup>

Some interpreters have seen in the goats' skins separation from evil. The later prophets in Israel who dressed in goatskins called the people to holiness and separation from evil. Some have felt the rams' skins dyed red taught the Israelites the importance of devotion to God since God specified the use of rams in some offerings of worship. A slightly different interpretation follows.

"Within the sanctuary, moving from the inside out, the curtains of fine linen were visible only to the priests who served in the presence of him who is purity and righteousness itself. The curtains of goats' hair were reminders of the daily sin offering that was a kid from the goats (Num 28:15) and of our cleansing from sin (Lev 16). The covering of rams' skins also recalled the sacrifice used in consecrating the priesthood (Lev. 8); and it was deliberately dyed red, showing that the priesthood was set apart by blood. Finally, the protective coating of the sea cows' [NIV; porpoise or dolphin, NASB; badger, AV, NKJV; goat, RSV] hides marked a protective separation between the dwelling place of God and the world."<sup>477</sup>

The total area covered by these tapestries was 45 feet long by 15 feet wide by 15 feet high. The most holy place was a 15-foot cube and the holy place was 30 by 15 by 15 feet. Thus the tabernacle structure was only about one and a half modern parking spaces wide and a little more than two parking spaces long.

<sup>475</sup>Ibid., pp. 302-3.

<sup>476</sup>Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch . . .*, p. 303.

<sup>477</sup>Kaiser, "Exodus," p. 459.

**The boards 26:15-25**

It is not clear whether these boards were solid or simply "frames" (NIV). The meaning of the Hebrew word (*garesh*, "boards") is uncertain. The latter view is probable.<sup>478</sup> If they were solid, the priests would not have been able to see the colorful curtains hanging down over the outside of the tabernacle from within. If these boards were frames, they could have seen them, or at least the most interior covering, through the walls. The embroidered curtains seem to have been visible overhead in either case and may have reminded the priests of God's celestial throne.

**The bars 26:26-30**

These were evidently rods that the priests threaded through the boards, or perhaps through rings attached to the boards, horizontally to give the boards stability and to hold them upright. They may have had significance to the Israelites, which some commentators have speculated upon, or they may have simply served a practical purpose.

**The veil 26:31-35**

The veil and curtains were alike in design and construction. The veil hung to act as a wall separating the holy and most holy places into two rooms. Some extrabiblical references to a second veil between the holy and most holy places have created confusion.<sup>479</sup> The Old Testament is clear that there was just one. The Book of Hebrews used the veil in the temple, which replaced this one in the tabernacle, as a symbol of Jesus Christ's body. Torn in crucifixion, it opened the way for access into God's presence (Heb. 10:20; cf. Matt. 27:50-51; Mark 15:37-38; Luke 23:45-46).

**The screen 26:36-37**

This was a drapery, as were the veil and curtains, that served as the front doorway to the tabernacle.

"The techniques used for the Tabernacle—gilded frames and beams, with coverings—were those used for 'prefab' structures (religious and otherwise) in Egypt for up to fifteen centuries before Moses."<sup>480</sup>

**5. The tabernacle courtyard 27:1-19**

In this section Moses described the altar of burnt offerings, the courtyard itself, and the oil for the lamps on the lampstand that the priests evidently prepared in the courtyard.

---

<sup>478</sup>Durham, p. 372.

<sup>479</sup>See Henry van der Meulen, "One or two veils in front of the holy of holies?" *Theologia Evangelica* 18:1 (March 1985):22-27.

<sup>480</sup>Kitchen, *The Bible*. . . , pp. 85-86.

### **The altar of burnt offerings 27:1-8**

The height of this altar was four and a half feet. This height has led some commentators to suggest that a step-like bench or ledge may have surrounded it on which the priests stood when they offered sacrifices.<sup>481</sup> In view of the command prohibiting steps up to Israel's altars (20:26), a ramp seems more probable (cf. Lev. 9:22). However there may have been neither a ramp nor steps. The altar had four horns (v. 2), one on each corner, to which the priests applied blood ritually (29:12). People occasionally clung to this altar as a place of refuge (cf. 1 Kings 1:50-51; 2:28). The priests also bound some animals to these horns when they sacrificed them (Ps. 118:27). There was a grate (v. 4) halfway to the ground inside the altar that allowed air to circulate under the sacrifices and ashes to fall to the ground below. The "ledge" appears to have projected out from the altar about half way up its sides. Perhaps the priests stood on this ledge while placing the offerings on the altar, or the ledge may have been on the inside of the altar to hold the grate.

This altar received the offerings of the Israelites. God met the Israelite where he was, in the courtyard, rather than where He was, within the veil. Nevertheless the Israelite had to make a special effort to approach God by entering the courtyard to present his offering (cf. 2 Cor. 5:18-20).

"The position of the Altar just inside the entrance to the court made it as clear as symbology could that the beginning of fellowship between God and man must be in sacrifice."<sup>482</sup>

The Book of Hebrews viewed this altar as a prototype of the better altar, which is Jesus Christ (Heb. 13:10).

### **The courtyard 27:9-19**

The courtyard was 50 cubits wide by 100 cubits long (75 feet by 150 feet, half the length of an American football field). This area is about the size of a modest home site in the United States. The curtains that formed its perimeter were only half as high as those surrounding the tabernacle building (7 feet instead of 15 feet). So the Israelites outside the courtyard could see the top part of the tabernacle building.

"All its vessels were of copper-brass, which, being allied to the earth in both colour and material, was a symbolic representation of the earthy side of the kingdom of God; whereas the silver of the capitals of the pillars, and of the hooks and rods which sustained the hangings, as well as the white colour of the byssus-hangings, might point to the holiness of this site for the kingdom of God."<sup>483</sup>

---

<sup>481</sup>E.g., Keil and Delitzsch, 2:186-87.

<sup>482</sup>Meyer, p. 349.

<sup>483</sup>Keil and Delitzsch, 2:190.

"The whole arrangement of the outer court, and in particular the placement of the altar of sacrifice and the laver, speak pointedly of man's approach to God."<sup>484</sup>

". . . this structure provided the same kind of physical separation between the holy God and his people as did the mountain at Sinai (temporal separation is also provided in the annual feasts and celebrations, e.g., the yearly Day of Atonement, Lev 16)."<sup>485</sup>

"The court preserved the Tabernacle from accidental or intentional profanation, and it gave the priests a certain measure of privacy for the prosecution of their duties. Its presence was a perpetual reminder that man should pause and consider, before he rushes into the presence of the Most High [cf. Eccles. 5:2]."<sup>486</sup>

"The courtyard is the place of worship where the people could gather—they entered his courts. If the courtyard does not interest us very much, it did the Israelites. Here the sacrifices were made, the choirs sang, the believers offered their praises, they had their sins forgiven, they came to pray, they appeared on the holy days, and they heard from God. It was sacred because God met them there; they left the 'world' so to speak and came into his presence."<sup>487</sup>

### **6. The investiture of the priests 27:20—28:43**

Here begins the revelation of those things that related to the Israelites' relationship with God (27:20—30:38). The preceding section (25:10—27:19) emphasized the revelation of the things that revealed God's character. The priesthood is the primary revelation in this new section.

"The approach to the Holy One, both within the biblical tradition and outside it, has always included some kind of mediatorial ministry, for it is inherent in any kind of 'high religion' that an otherwise unbridgeable chasm exist between ineffable deity and finite mankind.

"In earliest times, of course, Yahweh met directly with His creation, which in turn communicated with Him in word and act. With the passing of time and the rise of patriarchal familial and clan structures, the father of the household functioned also as its priest, the minister who stood between the family and its God. Finally—and even before the covenant at Sinai—there had developed some kind of order of priests, as Exodus 19:22 expressly declares."<sup>488</sup>

---

<sup>484</sup>Davis, p. 263.

<sup>485</sup>Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch . . .*, p. 298.

<sup>486</sup>Meyer, p. 348.

<sup>487</sup>The NET Bible note on 27:19.

<sup>488</sup>Merrill, "A Theology . . .," pp. 49-50.

The responsibilities of the priests in Israel fell into four primary categories.

1. They were responsible to maintain the holy place of the tabernacle. This included burning incense each morning and evening, trimming and refilling the lamps each evening, and replacing the showbread each Sabbath.
2. They also maintained the tabernacle courtyard. This involved offering sacrifices each morning and evening and blessing the congregation after the daily sacrifice. It also meant keeping the fire on the brazen altar burning always, and periodically removing its ashes.
3. They were responsible to inspect and appraise people and sacrifices. These included lepers, wives accused of adultery, and things dedicated to the sanctuary.
4. Finally, they were to teach and counsel the people. They were to communicate the Mosaic Law to the congregation and decide difficult cases of law (cf. Lev. 11—27).

### **The oil 27:20-21**

These instructions concern the clear olive oil that the priests were to prepare for and use in the tabernacle lamps. They form a transition from an emphasis on the tabernacle furnishings to the priests' ministry that follows.

The priests had to trim and refill the lamps on the lampstand in the holy place every evening. There was light in the holy place all night (cf. Lev. 24:3; 1 Sam. 3:3).

"Oil . . . is clearly a symbol of the Holy Spirit in Scripture."<sup>489</sup>

"It was a favourite saying of [Robert Murray] M'Cheyne when discussing the method of pulpit preparation, that only beaten oil might be used in the sanctuary, intimating that careful preparation was required for all material presented for the consideration of our hearers. It is not a light thing to speak to men for God, and none of us should essay the holy task apart from very careful preparation; but when we have done our utmost in this, we must depend on the kindling of the Divine fire. Ours is the beaten oil at the best, but what is that, unless the High Priest Himself shall cause the lamp to burn?"<sup>490</sup>

The Spirit would, on the one hand, be a perpetual source of light for them. On the other hand, He would also empower God's people to be a perpetual light to the nations (cf. Isa. 42:6).

---

<sup>489</sup>Davis, p. 264. See John F. Walvoord, *The Holy Spirit*, pp. 21-22; and Ryrie, p. 27.

<sup>490</sup>Meyer, pp. 323-24.

### **The priests 28:1-5**

Aaron had been functioning as a priest (Heb. *cohen*; 4:16). Now Moses officially appointed him and his sons to this office. God apparently specified Aaron because he was the brother of Moses whom God had already designated as the covenant mediator.<sup>491</sup> Before the sinful priests could approach their holy God, they had to cover their uncleanness symbolically with holy clothes. The priests had to wear these garments when they served in the tabernacle ritual, but they could not wear them at other times (35:19; Lev. 16:4, 23, 24). The fact that the workmen who made these garments needed to be wise and skillful (v. 3) indicates the importance that God placed on their construction.

Aaron's priesthood prefigured that of Jesus Christ (Heb. 5:5; 7:26; 9:11).

### **The ephod 28:6-14**

The ephod (a transliteration of the Hebrew word) was the most important and outermost garment of the high priest. It was an apron-like piece of clothing that fit over his robe (vv. 31-35).

"The duty of the high priest was to enter into the presence of God and make atonement for the people as their mediator. To show that as mediator he brought the nation to God, the names of the twelve tribes were engraved upon precious stones on the shoulders of the ephod. The precious stones, with their richness and brilliancy, formed the most suitable earthly substratum to represent the glory into which Israel was to be transformed as the possession of Jehovah (xix. 5); whilst the colours and material of the ephod, answering to the colours and texture of the hangings of the sanctuary, indicated the service performed in the sanctuary by the person clothed with the ephod, and the gold with which the coloured fabric was worked, the glory of that service."<sup>492</sup>

Josephus wrote that the names of Jacob's six oldest sons were on the stone on the right shoulder, and the names of his six youngest sons were on the stone on the left.<sup>493</sup>

### **The breastplate 28:15-30**

The breastplate was a pocket of material of the same fabric as the ephod. Twelve precious stones were fastened to the front of it, and two objects, the Urim and Thummim, which were probably stones also, lay within it.

The 12 jewels represented the 12 tribes. Each one was unique. God later called the Israelites His jewels (Mal. 3:17). The high priest carried the tribes on his heart (v. 30) as well as on his shoulders. The heart refers to the seat of feelings and affections in the Old Testament.

---

<sup>491</sup>Merrill, "A Theology . . .," p. 50.

<sup>492</sup>Keil and Delitzsch, 2:195.

<sup>493</sup>Josephus, 3:7:5.

"The purpose of the breastpiece was 'for making decisions' (v. 15). The Urim and Thummim, deposited in the pouch, were sacred lots used as the 'means of making decisions' (v. 30). The word 'Urim' begins with the first letter of the Hebrew alphabet and 'Thummim' begins with the last letter, so the lots were probably restricted to giving either positive or negative responses to questions asked of them. Strengthening that likelihood is the fact that the phrase 'Urim and Thummim' is best translated into English as 'curses and perfections,' meaning that if 'Urim' dominated when the lots were cast the answer would be no but if 'Thummim' dominated the answer would be yes."<sup>494</sup>

### **The robe 28:31-35**

The high priest also wore this garment. It was his basic garment over which he put the ephod. It covered him completely so his natural nakedness did not appear (cf. Gen. 3:21).

God may have intended the pomegranates and bells on the hem of the robe (vv. 33-34) to remind the Israelites of God's commandments. The pomegranate was probably a symbol of the spiritually nourishing quality of God's Word (cf. Prov. 25:11; Ps. 19:8-11; 119:25, 43, 50; Deut. 8:3; Prov. 9:8; Eccles. 12:9-11, 13). The bell was evidently a symbol of the sounding or proclamation of God's Word through testimony.<sup>495</sup> Some interpreters have felt pomegranates and bells represented fruitfulness and joy. Others have seen them as representing the fruits and gifts of God's Spirit.<sup>496</sup>

"A popular Jewish interpretation of 28:35 taught that one end of a long rope should be tied to the high priest's ankle before he entered the Holy Place. Since his slightest movement would cause the bells to tinkle, the people outside would assume that all was well as long as they could hear them. But if the bells fell silent for a time, the people outside would naturally assume that their priest had either fainted or died. They would then tug on the end of the rope to pull him out, making it unnecessary for unauthorized persons to enter the Holy Place in order to remove his body."<sup>497</sup>

### **The gold plate 28:36-38**

A plaque of pure gold was attached to the front of the high priest's turban. It bore the engraved words, "Holy to the LORD."

"Through this inscription, which was fastened upon his head-dress of brilliant white, the earthly reflection of holiness, he was crowned as the

---

<sup>494</sup>Youngblood, p. 127.

<sup>495</sup>See Keil and Delitzsch, 2:202-203.

<sup>496</sup>Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch . . .*, p. 306, recorded several other possible explanations of these decorations.

<sup>497</sup>Youngblood, p. 128.

sanctified of the Lord (Ps. cvi. 16), and endowed with the power to exterminate the sin which clung to the holy offerings of the people on account of the unholiness of their nature, so that the gifts of the nation became well-pleasing to the Lord, and the good pleasure of God was manifested to the nation."<sup>498</sup>

"It was necessary also that he should be *a holy man*. . . . It was as though they said: 'We are conscious that our representative may fail in personal holiness, but on that golden plate of purest metal we have placed our ideal, the high-water mark, which we desire our priest should attain.'"<sup>499</sup>

"'Set apart for Yahweh' refers not alone, indeed not even primarily to 'Aaron' and his successors, as v 38 makes plain. It is Israel that is 'set apart for Yahweh,' 'Aaron' of course among Israel and representing Israel . . ."<sup>500</sup>

### **The tunic, turban, and sash 28:39**

These items completed the high priest's wardrobe. The tunic was an undergarment, the turban covered his head, and the sash served as a belt.

### **The garments of the lesser priests 28:40-43**

The clothing described in these verses appears to be the garments the priests other than the high priest wore. All the priests ministered barefoot out of reverence for the holiness of God (cf. 3:5; Josh. 5:15).

"This prescription for undergarments alludes to and reminds one of the clothing which God made for Adam and Eve in the Garden of Eden to cover their nakedness (Ge 3:21)."<sup>501</sup>

"The essential point of the priestly vestments is the central point of all the instructions concerning the media of worship: Yahweh is present, and Israel must respond to that Presence, be guided in that response, and be reminded constantly in worship as in life of the reality of the Presence and of the need for response."<sup>502</sup>

"There is much that can be derived from this chapter to form principles of spiritual leadership; but the overall point can be worded this way: Those whom God selects to minister to the congregation through intercessory prayer, divine counsel, and sacrificial worship, must always represent the holiness of Yahweh in their activities and demeanor."<sup>503</sup>

---

<sup>498</sup>Keil and Delitzsch, 2:204.

<sup>499</sup>Meyer, p. 359.

<sup>500</sup>Durham, p. 388.

<sup>501</sup>Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch . . .*, p. 306.

<sup>502</sup>Durham, p. 389.

<sup>503</sup>The NET Bible note on 28:43.

### **7. The consecration of the priests 29:1-37**

The Israelites carried out the instructions given here later. The record of this seven-day ritual appears in Leviticus 8. I shall defer comment since Moses explained the offerings and procedures specified in this chapter more fully in Leviticus. The facts that God specified this ceremony in such detail and Moses recorded it at such length point to its importance for Israel.

"To Israel had been granted the privilege of being a special people; to Aaron and his sons was granted now the privilege of being a special mediating instrument between that people and Yahweh, their Lord. A covenant meal was always part of such an arrangement (cf. 24:11; 32:6), and that is precisely what is implied in the sharing of the ram of consecration by Yahweh and the priests."<sup>504</sup>

All the priests bathed, representing the necessity of cleanliness before God. The priests had sacrificial blood applied to their ears, thumbs, and big toes (v. 20). This symbolized their complete consecration: to hear the word of God, to serve as mediators, and to walk as an example to others. They experienced sprinkling with blood signifying their complete sanctification. Their anointing with oil (v. 21) represented their endowment with power by God's Spirit for divine service.

"The investiture of the high priest consisted of nine acts (Lev. 8:7-9), whereas that of the ordinary priests involved but three."<sup>505</sup>

### **8. The service of the priests 29:38—30:38**

#### **The daily burnt offering, meal offering, and drink offering 29:38-46**

The priests began to offer these sacrifices as soon as the tabernacle was complete (ch. 40).

In the offering of a young lamb each morning and each evening with flour, oil, and wine, the Israelites consecrated their lives afresh daily to the Lord. This was an offering of worship and expiation (i.e., the removal of sin, Lev. 1:4). It insured Israel's continuing communion with her God.

". . . thus the day was opened and closed with gifts to Yahweh, from whom all gifts were believed to come."<sup>506</sup>

#### **The altar of incense and the incense offering 30:1-10**

The place of this altar in the tabernacle has been a problem for some readers of the Book of Hebrews. Hebrews 9:4 can be understood as describing its location as being inside the holy of holies with the ark. The writer of Hebrews probably meant that the veil, not the

<sup>504</sup>Merrill, "A Theology . . .," p. 51.

<sup>505</sup>Davis, pp. 278-79.

<sup>506</sup>Durham, p. 396.

holy of holies, had the altar of incense and the ark of the covenant connected with it (Heb. 9:3-4). These pieces of furniture were on either side of the veil. Describing it this way clarified that the writer meant the veil between the holy place and the holy of holies. Old Testament passages say that the incense altar was inside the holy place with the golden lampstand and the table of showbread (cf. 30:6; 40:3-5, 21-27). Most commentators on Exodus locate it in the holy place.<sup>507</sup> Furthermore, Leviticus 16:2 and Hebrews 9:7 say that the high priest went into the holy of holies only once a year on the day of Atonement. Another view is that the altar of incense was in the holy of holies.<sup>508</sup>

The priests would offer incense on this altar each morning and each evening, and the incense would burn all the time. The priests presented the daily burnt offering and the daily incense offering together each day. Both were demonstrations of constant uninterrupted devotion to God. Students of Exodus have almost universally recognized the incense offered as a symbol of prayer that ascends to God (cf. Rev. 5:8). It was a sweet aroma in His nostrils and was essential to the maintenance of the divine-human relationship.

"Morning and evening prayers have been the habit of all ages. With the one we go forth to our labour till the evening, asking that our Father will give us His God-speed and guidance and protection. With the other we entreat forgiveness and mercy."<sup>509</sup>

"He who offers no sacrifice in his prayer, who does not sacrifice his self-will, does not really pray."<sup>510</sup>

The horns of this altar (v. 10), as well as the horns on the altar of burnt offerings (the brazen altar), probably symbolized strength.<sup>511</sup>

Once a year Aaron applied the atonement blood on this altar to cleanse it afresh for another year (v. 10). The description "most holy to the LORD" means the altar could not be used for any other purpose than what is stated here.

The directions concerning the sanctuary conclude with this section.

### **The atonement money 30:11-16**

The directions regarding the tabernacle opened with instructions concerning contributions for its construction (25:1-9). They close with this directive that every Israelite 20 years or

<sup>507</sup>E.g., Cassuto, p. 391; Keil and Delitzsch, 2:208; Kaiser, "Exodus," p. 472; Hyatt, p. 292; Cole, p. 205; Ellison, p. 162; Maxie D. Dunnam, *Exodus*, p. 327; Hannah, p. 154; and Durham, p. 399. This is also the position of the writers of the articles on the tabernacle and the temple in *The New Bible Dictionary*, the *International Standard Bible Encyclopaedia*, and the *Wycliffe Bible Encyclopedia*.

<sup>508</sup>J. Dwight Pentecost, *A Faith That Endures: The Book of Hebrews Applied to the Real Issues of Life*, pp. 139-40.

<sup>509</sup>Meyer, p. 375.

<sup>510</sup>*Ibid.*, p. 387.

<sup>511</sup>Margit Sring, "The Horn-Motifs of the Bible and the Ancient Near East," *Andrews University Seminary Studies* 22:3 (Autumn 1984):334.

older was to pay a flat fee of half a shekel during Israel's census for the tabernacle's maintenance (Num. 1:2; 26:2). Everyone was to pay the same amount because the cost of everyone's atonement was the same in the Lord's sight.

"It was no ordinary tribute, therefore, which Israel was to pay to Jehovah as its King, but an act demanded by the holiness of the theocratic covenant. As an expiation for souls, it pointed to the unholiness of Israel's nature, and reminded the people continually, that by nature it was alienated from God, and could only remain in covenant with the Lord and live in His kingdom on the ground of His grace, which covered its sin."<sup>512</sup>

Israel's leaders collected this money whenever they took a census. In time it became a yearly "temple tax" (Matt. 17:24). A half shekel weighed .2 ounces (6 grams), and it was silver. "Money" in verse 16 is literally "silver." In our Lord's day it amounted to two days wages (Matt. 17:24). Evidently the taking of a census incurred some guilt (v. 12). Perhaps it reflected lack of complete trust in God to multiply the nation as He had promised (cf. 2 Sam. 24).

"Do you recognize that you belong to a redeemed world? Even if all do not avail themselves of the Redemption which has been achieved, yet it is available for all; and more benefits than we can ever estimate are always accruing since God so loved the world that He gave His only begotten Son."<sup>513</sup>

### **The brazen laver 30:17-21**

The laver was a large reservoir for the water that the priests used to wash with as they performed their duties. It stood between the brazen altar and the sanctuary. Its presence there symbolized the fact that cleansing is necessary after the making of atonement and before the enjoyment of fellowship with God.

"The necessity of daily cleansing on the part of those who are engaged even in the most holy service, and of all who would approach God, is so obvious as hardly to require comment. The body washed with pure water has for its counterpart the daily cleansing of the soul, without which no man may minister in the Divine presence [cf. John 13:10]."<sup>514</sup>

The "base" (v. 18) was probably not a pedestal but a smaller vessel used to draw as much water out of the laver as the priest might need to wash. The priests washed their feet as well as their hands (v. 21).

### **The anointing oil 30:22-33**

The special mixture God specified here was for use only in anointing the tabernacle, its furnishings, its utensils, and the priests. Four fragrant spices blended with olive oil to

---

<sup>512</sup>Keil and Delitzsch, 2:212.

<sup>513</sup>Meyer, p. 391.

<sup>514</sup>Ibid., p. 351.

produce an excellent perfume. It was holy (different) in that the Israelites used it exclusively for this special purpose in the service of God. The priests could use it for no other purpose in Israel.

### **The incense 30:34-38**

As with the anointing oil, only a certain mixture of four ingredients was acceptable as incense for burning on the incense altar. Similarly not just any prayer is acceptable to God; only prayers offered as He has instructed will be acceptable (cf. 1 John 5:14).

"*Stacte* is a fragrant resin obtained from some species of cistus, or 'rockrose.' *Onycha* is the horny plate that covers a species of mussel found in the lakes of India which, when burned, emits a musky odor. *Galbanum* is a pleasantly aromatic gum resin derived from certain umbelliferous plants. *Frankincense* (from the Old French for 'pure incense'), as used by the Jews, Greeks, and Romans, was a gum resin now called *olibanum* which was derived from certain trees of the genus *boswellia* found growing on the limestone of South Arabia and Somaliland. Thus, three of the four ingredients in the incense burned on the golden altar were *gum resins*. Gum resins are mixtures of gum and resin obtained from plants or trees by incision. Resins burn readily because they contain volatile oils."<sup>515</sup>

### **9. The builders of the tabernacle 31:1-11**

Chapter 31 summarizes what God required for His people to approach Him. God appointed the men who would be responsible for interpreting Moses' instructions about the tabernacle and constructing it. He filled them with His Spirit so they would make choices consistent with His will (v. 3).

Bezalel ("In the shadow of God") was evidently Miriam's grandson.<sup>516</sup> Oholiab ("The Father is my tent") was his assistant. God endowed both men with natural ability as well as with the Holy Spirit to do the work He had appointed for them (cf. Acts 6:3).

"Though they were skilled, the narrative emphasizes clearly that they were to do the work of building the tabernacle by means of the skills that the Spirit of God would give them. There is an important parallel here with God's work of Creation in Genesis 1. Just as God did his work of Creation by means of his Spirit (Ge 1:2—2:3), so also Israel was to do their work of building the tabernacle by God's Spirit.

"The parallels between God's work in Creation and Israel's work on the tabernacle are part of the Pentateuch's larger emphasis on the importance of the work of God's Spirit among his people. . . . It is of interest here to note that the two key characters in the Pentateuch who provide a clear

<sup>515</sup>John V. Myers, "What Was 'Brimstone?'" *Kronos* 9:1 (Fall 1983):58.

<sup>516</sup>Josephus, 3:6:1.

picture of genuine obedience to God's will, Joseph and Joshua, are specifically portrayed in the narrative as those who are filled with the Spirit of God (Ge 41:38; Dt 34:9)."<sup>517</sup>

### **10. The sign of the Sabbath 31:12-18**

"As a sign of the Noahic covenant is the rainbow (Gen. 9:13), and as the sign of the Abrahamic covenant is circumcision (Gen. 17:11), the sign of the Mosaic covenant is the observance and celebration of the Sabbath day (Exod. 31:13, 17)."<sup>518</sup>

God intended this sign to teach Israel and the other nations that as redeemed people the Israelites had already entered into a measure of rest. They were partakers of God's rest.

Observance of the Sabbath was unique to Israel. It distinguished Israel from all other nations. So important was its observance that the Israelite who failed to observe it died (v. 15). This sign was to continue throughout all succeeding generations (v. 13) as long as God continued to work through Israel as His primary instrument (cf. Rom. 10:4; Heb. 9:10).

"The analogy between God's work of Creation and Israel's construction of the tabernacle is made explicit by the reference to the Sabbath at the close of the narrative."<sup>519</sup>

Whereas God did not command Christians to observe the Sabbath, the Scriptures do teach the importance of periodic physical rest regardless of the dispensation in which we may live (cf. Mark 6:31; 14:41; Rev. 6:11).

"We don't have to be servants twenty-four hours a day, seven days a week."<sup>520</sup>

This section concludes the record of what Moses received from God during the 40 days and nights he was in the mountain that began in 25:1.

Moses wrote the instructions concerning the tabernacle so they parallel what he wrote about the Creation. Note some of the similarities in the narratives.<sup>521</sup>

---

<sup>517</sup>Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch . . .*, p. 309.

<sup>518</sup>Youngblood, pp. 112-13. The sign of the New Covenant is the Lord's Supper (Matt. 26:26-28; Mark 14:22-24; Luke 22:19-20; 1 Cor. 11:23-25).

<sup>519</sup>Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch . . .*, p. 309.

<sup>520</sup>John F. Alexander, "Sabbath Rest," *The Other Side* 146 (November 1983):8. See Jeffrey Siker-Gieseler, "The Theology of the Sabbath in the Old Testament: A Canonical Approach," *Studia Biblica et Theologica* 11:1 (April 1981):5-20, in which the author brought together and interpreted the references to the Sabbath in the Old Testament.

<sup>521</sup>Adapted from Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch . . .*, pp. 289-90, 306, 309.

| <b>CREATION (GEN. 1—2)</b>  | <b>TABERNACLE (EXOD. 25—31)</b>   |
|---|---|
| The subject of the narrative is the establishment of God's good creation.   | The subject of the narrative is the re-establishment of God's good creation.  |
| The heavens and earth are the arena for the creation of divine-human fellowship.  | The tabernacle is the arena for the restoration of divine-human fellowship.   |
| God's Spirit was the enabling power in creation (Gen. 1:2—2:3).   | God's Spirit was the enabling power in the construction of the tabernacle (Exod. 31:3, 6).  |
| Structurally the creation account consists of seven acts each marked by divine speech ("And God said," Gen. 1:3, 6, 9, 14, 20, 24, 26). | Structurally the tabernacle account consists of seven acts each introduced by divine speech ("And the LORD said," Exod. 25:1; 30:11, 17, 22, 34; 31:1, 12). |
| God made Adam and Eve according to a specific pattern: the image of God (Gen. 1:26-27).   | Moses made the tabernacle according to a specific pattern: a heavenly reality (Exod. 25:9).   |
| The Garden of Eden contained gold and jewels, and cherubim guarded it (Gen. 2:12a, 12b; 3:24).  | The tabernacle contained gold and jewels, and cherubim guarded it (Exod. 25:3, 7, 18).  |
| When creation was complete, God inspected and evaluated all that He had done (Gen. 1:31) and uttered a blessing (Gen. 1:28).            | When the tabernacle was complete, Moses inspected and evaluated all that was done (Exod. 39:43a) and uttered a blessing (Exod. 39:43b).                     |
| God rested on the seventh day at the end of the creation narrative (Gen. 2:1-3).  | God told the Israelites to rest on the seventh day at the end of the tabernacle narrative (Exod. 31:12-18).   |
| A fall followed the creation narrative (Gen. 3).  | A fall followed the tabernacle narrative (Exod. 32).  |
| This fall resulted in the breaking of the Adamic Covenant (Gen. 3:14-19).   | This fall resulted in the breaking of the Mosaic Covenant (Exod. 33:1-5).   |
| God covered Adam and Eve's nakedness (Gen. 3:21).   | God ordered the covering of the priests' nakedness (Exod. 28:42).   |

#### **D. THE BREAKING AND RENEWAL OF THE COVENANT CHS. 32—34**

"If a narrative paradigmatic of what Exodus is really about were to be sought, Exod 32—34 would be the obvious first choice.

"That these chapters are paradigmatic of Israel's relationship with Yahweh throughout the OT is also obvious, and the farthest thing from coincidence."<sup>522</sup>

<sup>522</sup>Durham, p. 418.

### **1. The failure of Israel ch. 32**

The scene shifts now and we see what was happening in the Israelite camp while Moses was in the heights of Sinai receiving the instructions for the Israelites' worship. The people were apostatizing and were devising their own form of worship.

#### **Israel's apostasy 32:1-6**

Apostasy means "to stand away from" something (Gr. *apostasis*). This word describes a departure. An apostate is someone who has departed from something. In the religious sense the word refers to extreme departure from God's will. "Apostate" is not necessarily a synonym for unbeliever. The person who departs from God's will may be a believer or an unbeliever. The term refers to obedience, not salvation. Most of the apostates in Israel were apparently believers since the Bible consistently regards Israel as a whole as the people of God.

"Throughout the remainder of the Pentateuch, the incident of the worship of the golden calf cast a dark shadow across Israel's relationship with God, much the same way as the account of the Fall in Genesis 3 marked a major turning point in God's dealing with humankind."<sup>523</sup>

It has always been hard for God's people to wait for Him (cf. 1 Sam. 8:4-5; Ps. 27:14; 37:7; 62:5; et al.). When Moses lingered on the mountain, the people decided to worship a new god (v. 1) and make a new covenant. They did not wait for guidance from God. This reflects a shallow commitment to Him and their leader, Moses. Evidently they concluded that Moses had perished in the fire on Mt. Sinai and decided to select a new leader. Moses was a god to Israel in the sense that he was their leader (4:16). Now they turned from Moses as their leader to Aaron.

Some commentators have interpreted Aaron's instruction that the Israelites should sacrifice their jewelry and ornaments (v. 2) as designed to discourage their rebellion.<sup>524</sup> If this was his intent, he failed (v. 3). It seems more probable that Aaron approved of their plan.

Aaron could have intended the golden calf to represent a god other than Yahweh or Yahweh Himself.

"In the present passage the term *gods*, or rather *god* [Elohim], represented in the golden calf, seems to be understood as an attempt to represent the God of the covenant with a physical image. The apostasy of the golden calf, therefore, was idolatry, not polytheism. Indeed, throughout Scripture Israel was repeatedly warned about the sin of idolatry."<sup>525</sup>

<sup>523</sup>Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch . . .*, p. 310.

<sup>524</sup>See Kennedy, p. 138; Meyer, p. 421; and Jacob, p. 940.

<sup>525</sup>Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch . . .*, p. 311. See also Keil and Delitzsch, 2:222; and David E. Fass, "The Molten Calf: Judgment, Motive, and Meaning," *Judaism* 39:2 (Spring 1990):171-83.

"It is precisely the attempt to worship *Yahweh* by means he has already declared totally unacceptable that makes the sin of the golden calf so destructive, far more so than a simple shift of allegiance to 'other' or 'foreign' gods."<sup>526</sup>

The calf provided a visible symbol that the Israelites could and did identify as their deliverer. The English word "idol" derives from the Greek *eidolon*, meaning "something to be seen." The Apis bull was such a symbol in Egyptian religion. The Egyptians viewed this animal as the vehicle on which a god rode in power, and as such they identified it as divine itself. Sacred bulls or calves were common in the ancient Near East because of this identification. Patterning their worship of *Yahweh* after the Egyptians' worship of their god of the sun, Osiris, the Israelites were saying that this was their way of worshipping *Yahweh*.

"The bull seems to have had manifold meanings in the iconography of the Near East. It symbolized the god. It expressed attributes of a god. It represented a pedestal for the god. Each of these meanings is important in understanding the cult of the golden calves in Israel's religious experience."<sup>527</sup>

The altar and feast that accompanied the construction of the idol (v. 5) support the contention that Aaron was leading the people in a celebration of a new covenant. His disobedience to the second commandment (20:2-6), which he had received by this time, resulted in his returning to an Egyptian form of worship that repudiated *Yahweh*'s will. The "play" that followed the feast seems to have been wicked (cf. v. 25).

"The verb translated 'to play' suggests illicit and immoral sexual activity which normally accompanied fertility rights found among the Canaanites who worshipped the god Baal."<sup>528</sup>

"That the sin of Aaron and the people was tantamount to covenant repudiation is clear from the account of the making of the calf. The calf was hailed as 'the god . . . who brought you up out of Egypt' (Ex. 32:4), the exact language of the historical prologue of the Sinaitic Covenant in which *Yahweh* described the basis of His authority to be Israel's God (20:2). Moreover, Aaron built an altar for the purpose of covenant affirmation and ceremony (v. 5), precisely as Moses had done previously on the people's commitment to the covenant arrangement (24:4). Aaron's proclamation concerning a festival and its implementation on the following day (32:5-6) was again identical to the celebration that attended the mutual acceptance of the covenant terms under Moses (24:11)."<sup>529</sup>

---

<sup>526</sup>Durham, p. 421.

<sup>527</sup>Stephen Von Wyrick, "Israel's Golden Calves," *Biblical Illustrator* 13:1 (Fall 1986):10. This is a very fine summary article. See also Amihai Mazar, "Bronze Bull Found in Israelite 'High Place' From the Time of the Judges," *Biblical Archaeology Review* 9:5 (September-October 1983):34-40.

<sup>528</sup>Davis, p. 285.

<sup>529</sup>Merrill, "A Theology . . .," p. 53.

"From Aaron's viewpoint it was merely a matter of iconography, representing God by a bull and in that way holding 'a festival to *I AM*' (Exod. 32:5). But from the people's viewpoint, as seen from the command to Aaron 'make us gods' (v. 1), they were turning to a pantheon of gods, represented by a bull god, to lead them."<sup>530</sup>

Many years later Israel's King Jeroboam I re-established worship of the golden calves, and this practice became a great stumbling block to Israel (1 Kings 12:28-31).

"The calf represented Yahweh on *their* terms. Yahweh had made clear repeatedly that he would be received and worshiped only on *his* terms."<sup>531</sup>

### **Moses' intercession 32:7-14**

God's recounting the news of the golden calf to Moses gives the reader the divine perspective on Israel's sin. Moses stressed three points in this pericope.

"These three points—idolatry of the golden calf, Israel's stiff-necked refusal to obey, and God's compassion—provide the basis of the subsequent narratives and God's further dealings with this people. Though a great act of God's judgment follows immediately (vv. 27-35), the central themes of the subsequent narratives focus on God's compassion and a new start for Israel."<sup>532</sup>

God called the Israelites Moses' people (v. 7) probably because they had repudiated the covenant and God was therefore no longer their God. God regarded the Israelites' sacrificing before the calf as worship of it (v. 8).

God offered to destroy the rebellious Israelites and to make Moses' descendants into a great nation (v. 10). He may have meant that He would destroy that older generation of Israelites immediately. God was proposing action that would have been consistent with His promises to the patriarchs and the conditions of the Mosaic Covenant (cf. Num. 14:12). This offer constituted a test of Moses' ministry as Israel's mediator. For Moses this test was real, even though the proposed destruction of Israel lay outside God's plan (cf. the promises to Abraham; Gen. 49:10). Similarly, God told Abraham to offer up Isaac even though God had previously told him that Isaac would be his designated heir. And Jesus offered Himself to Israel as her king even though His death on the cross, according to "the predetermined plan and foreknowledge of God" (Acts 2:23), had to precede the establishment of His kingdom. Moses passed the test. He did not forsake his people but urged God to have mercy on them.

In his model intercessory prayer (vv. 11-13) Moses appealed to God on the basis of several things: God's previous work for Israel (v. 11), God's glory and reputation (v. 12), and God's word (v. 13).

---

<sup>530</sup>Waltke, *An Old . . .*, p. 469.

<sup>531</sup>Durham, p. 442.

<sup>532</sup>Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch . . .*, p. 312.

The reference to God changing His mind (v. 14) has been a problem to many Bible readers. The expression implies no inconsistency or mutability in the character of God. He does not vacillate but always does everything in harmony with His own character. Within the plan of God, however, He has incorporated enough flexibility so that in most situations there are a number of options that are acceptable to Him. In view of Moses' intercession God proceeded to take a different course of action than He had previously intended.<sup>533</sup>

"In only two of the thirty-eight instances in the OT is this word used of men repenting. God's repentance or 'relenting' is an anthropomorphism (a description of God in human forms) that aims at showing us that he can and does change in his actions and emotions to men when given proper grounds for doing so, and thereby he does not change in his basic integrity or character (cf. Pss 99:6; 106:45; Jer 18:8; Amos 7:3, 6; Jonah 3:10; James 5:16). The grounds for the Lord's repenting are three: (1) intercession (cf. Amos 7:1-6); (2) repentance of the people (Jer 18:3-11; Jonah 3:9-10); and (3) compassion (Deut 32:36; Judg 2:18; 2 Sam 24:16)."<sup>534</sup>

Advocates of the "openness of God" overemphasize this change in God and conclude that He did not just relent from a former proposed course of action but changed in a more fundamental way. They say He took a completely different direction *that He had not anticipated previously*. This view stresses the free will of man, in this case Moses' intercession, at the expense of the sovereignty of God.

#### **Aaron's excuse 32:15-24**

Moses broke the tablets of the law (v. 19) symbolizing the fact that Israel had broken its covenant with Yahweh. He then proceeded to destroy the golden calf, the symbol of the illicit covenant into which they had entered (cf. 2 Kings 23:15). By treating the calf image as he did (v. 20) Moses was dishonoring as well as destroying it.

". . . the biblical description of the destruction of the Golden Calf constitutes an Israelite development of an early literary pattern that was employed in Canaan to describe the total annihilation of a detested enemy."<sup>535</sup>

Moses probably ordered the people to drink the polluted water for the following reason.

". . . to set forth in a visible manner both the sin and its consequences. The sin was poured as it were into their bowels along with the water, as a

---

<sup>533</sup>See John Munro, "Prayer to a Sovereign God," *Interest* 56:2 (February 1990):20-21; Thomas L. Constable, "What Prayer Will and Will Not Change," in *Essays in Honor of J. Dwight Pentecost*, pp. 99-113; and Robert B. Chisholm Jr., "Does God 'Change His Mind'?" *Bibliotheca Sacra* 152:608 (October-December 1995):387-99; Hannah, p. 156.

<sup>534</sup>Kaiser, "Exodus," p. 479.

<sup>535</sup>Samuel Loewenstamm, "The Making and Destruction of the Golden Calf," *Biblica* 48 (1967):485.

symbolical sign that they would have to bear it and atone for it, just as a woman who was suspected of adultery was obliged to drink the curse-water (Num. 5:24)."<sup>536</sup>

"In this manner the thing they had worshiped would become a product of their own waste, the very epitome of worthlessness and impurity."<sup>537</sup>

Some writers have suggested that this water with the gold dust suspended in it would have been red and is a type of the blood of Christ.<sup>538</sup> This view lacks support in the text. The writer said nothing about Moses offering it to the Lord to make atonement for the sins of the Israelites. The people drank it; they did not offer it to God (v. 20).

Verse 24 suggests Aaron may have formed the calf by casting it in a mold, but verse 4 gives the impression that he carved it out of a shapeless mass.<sup>539</sup> The best solution seems to be that Aaron made this calf like similar Egyptian idols. He probably built a wooden frame and then overlaid it with gold that he shaped (cf. Isa. 30:22).

Aaron tried to shift the blame for his actions to the people (cf. Gen. 3:12-13).

"A woman of society and fashion will say, 'I admit that I am not what I might be, but then look at my set; it is the furnace that did it.' A man will doubt God, question the Bible and truth, and excuse himself by saying, 'It is not I, it is the drift of modern tendency; it is the furnace that did it.' 'There came out this calf.'"<sup>540</sup>

### **The Levites' loyalty 32:25-29**

The Levites were Moses' closest kinsmen. Perhaps it was for this reason, as well as their loyalty to the Lord, that they sided with Moses. Their decision and obedience (v. 28) demonstrated their faith in God. They chose to go the way of His appointed leader, Moses, instead of following their rebellious brethren.

God's punishment of the rebels was severe (v. 27) because of the seriousness of their offense. It was also merciful; only 3,000 of the 600,000 men died (v. 28).

The Levites' blessing was God's choice of their tribe as the priestly tribe in Israel (Num. 3:12-13). The nation as a whole forfeited its right to be a kingdom of priests (19:6) by its rebellion here.

---

<sup>536</sup>Keil and Delitzsch, 2:226.

<sup>537</sup>Merrill, *Deuteronomy*, p. 196. Cf. Jacob, p. 950.

<sup>538</sup>E.g., M. R. DeHaan, *The Chemistry of the Blood and Other Stirring Messages*, pp. 61-63.

<sup>539</sup>See Loewenstamm; idem, "The Making and Destruction of the Golden Calf—a Rejoinder," *Biblica* 56 (1975):330-43; and Stanley Gevirtz, "Heret in the Manufacture of the Golden Calf," *Biblica* 65 (1984):377-81.

<sup>540</sup>Meyer, p. 422.

"The idiom 'fill the hands' [the literal meaning of "dedicate yourselves," NASB, or "you have been set apart," NIV, v. 29] means 'institute to a priestly office,' 'install,' 'inaugurate,' and the like."<sup>541</sup>

### **Moses' second intercession 32:30-35**

To make atonement (v. 30) means to obtain a covering for sin.

We see Moses' great love for the Israelites as their mediator in his willingness to die for them (cf. Rom. 9:3). Being blotted out of God's book may refer to physical death. Alternatively the book could refer to the register of those loyal to Yahweh and thereby deserving His special blessing (cf. Ps. 69:28; Isa. 4:3; Ezek. 13:9; Dan. 12:1; Mal. 3:16).<sup>542</sup> God explained a principle of His dealings with people here. Individual sin brings individual responsibility that leads finally to individual judgment (cf. Ezek. 18:4). God was not saying that everyone will bear the punishment for his own sins precluding substitution, but everyone is responsible for his own sins. He chose not to take Moses' life as a substitute for the guilty in Israel since this would not have been just. Moses being a sinner himself could not have served as a final acceptable substitute for other sinners in any case.

God promised Moses that He would not abandon His people for their sin (v. 34), but when their rebellion was full (at Kadesh Barnea, Num. 14:27-35) He smote those of them who remained (v. 35).<sup>543</sup>

### **2. The re-establishment of fellowship ch. 33**

Breaking God's covenant resulted in the Israelites' separation from fellowship with Him. It did not terminate their relationship with Him, but it did hinder their fellowship with Him. Similarly when Christians sin we do not cease to be God's people, but our fellowship with the Lord suffers.

"Moses had now returned to Mount Sinai and there God spoke with him again. The text has several indications that the author now wants to show that Israel's relationship with God had been fundamentally affected by their 'great sin' of worshiping the golden calf. All was not the same. The narrative shows that there was now a growing distance between God and Israel that had not been there before. Each of the following sections of narrative demonstrates specifically the changes that have occurred in God's relationship to Israel. We should also note that the Levites are chosen in this narrative; in Numbers 3 they replace the firstborn Israelites as priests. This represents a further change in Israel's relationship with God in the Sinai covenant."<sup>544</sup>

---

<sup>541</sup>Hyatt, p. 310.

<sup>542</sup>Durham, p. 432.

<sup>543</sup>See Jonathan Master, "Exodus 32 as an Argument for Traditional Theism," *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society* 45:4 (December 2002):585-98.

<sup>544</sup>Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch . . .*, p. 313.

Notice some comparisons and contrasts between the narrative of the original giving of the covenant and this narrative that describes the renewal of the covenant.<sup>545</sup>

| <b>THE GIVING OF THE COVENANT<br/>(EXOD. 20—31)</b>   | <b>THE RESTORING OF THE COVENANT<br/>(EXOD. 33—34)</b>   |
|---|--|
| All the people were to be priests (19:5-6).   | Only the Levites would be priests (32:29).   |
| Moses ascended Mt. Sinai and God spoke with him there while the people waited below (19:20).  | Moses ascended Mt. Sinai and God spoke with him there while the people waited below (32:31).   |
| God sent His angel to destroy Israel's enemies (23:23).   | God sent His angel lest He destroy Israel (33:2-5).  |
| The tabernacle in the center of the camp was to be the "tent of meeting" where God would meet with the people (25:8; 27:21; 28:43; 29:42-43).             | Another "tent of meeting" outside the camp was where God met with Moses and Joshua only (33:7).  |
| God displayed His glory for all the people to see on Mt. Sinai (24:16-17).  | Only Moses could see God's glory partially (33:18-23), and the people only saw God's glory reflected on Moses' face (34:29).             |
| God covered Moses' face lest he see too much of God's glory (33:18-23).   | Moses covered his face lest the people see too much of God's glory (34:34-35).   |
| God revealed His glory to test the people and to keep them from sinning (20:20).  | God revealed His glory to show His grace and compassion (33:19; 34:6-7).   |
| God wrote the Ten Commandments on stone tablets (Deut. 10:1-4).   | Moses wrote the Ten Commandments on stone tablets (34:28).   |
| God gave the Ten Commandments (20:2-17).  | God gave the "ten words" (34:27-28).   |
| The structure of the narrative begins and ends with warnings against idolatry (20:22-23; 23:13) and instructions for proper worship (20:24-26; 23:14-19). | The structure of the narrative begins and ends with warnings against idolatry (34:11-17) and instructions for proper worship (34:11-26). |
| Moses expressed amazement when he saw the people (32:19).   | The people expressed amazement when they saw Moses (34:30).  |

33:1-6            God would not now dwell in the midst of the Israelites as He intended to do in the tabernacle because they had repudiated His covenant with them (v. 3).

The announcement of the change in God's relation to Israel and the consequent loss of blessing led the people to mourn and sacrifice out of

<sup>545</sup>Adapted from *ibid.*, pp. 313-17.

sorrow (vv. 4-6). They willingly gave up the use of the ornaments that they had used in the rebellion and that were, therefore, an offense to God.

33:7-11 The tent referred to here cannot be the tabernacle since the Israelites had not yet built it. It must have been a smaller tent used as a meeting place for Moses, the people, and God over which the pillar of cloud stood. This tent served some of the functions of the tabernacle that later replaced it. Moses now moved this tent outside the camp to symbolize the removal of God's presence from the people's midst.<sup>546</sup>

Moses' personal communion with God was uncommonly intimate (v. 11; cf. Num. 12:6-8). One writer believed that the cloud was Jesus.<sup>547</sup> "Face to face" is an idiom that communicates intimacy, not a theophany.<sup>548</sup>

33:12-16 God's withdrawal from Israel created problems for Moses as Israel's mediator. If God was not going to enter into covenant relationship to Israel as He had first described (13:21-22), how could Moses lead the nation (cf. 3:11, 13)? This is the focus of Moses' first request (v. 13). He wanted reassurance that God Himself would lead Israel in the wilderness.<sup>549</sup> God assured him that He would continue to go with His people and thus provide the rest that His presence among them inspired (v. 14). God gave another dramatic revelation of Himself similar to the one that He had formerly given at Sinai (19:9-25).

Moses' second request was that God might confirm him as God's chosen mediator among the Israelites. He also asked that God might confirm the nation as His chosen people in view of the change in the relationship (v. 16).

33:17-23 God promised this too (v. 17).

Third, Moses requested a greater perception of God's essential being than he had experienced thus far. This would also enable him to serve God more effectively in view of the altered relationship (v. 18). God explained that no one can view Him directly and live.

"As our bodily eye is dazzled, and its power of vision destroyed, by looking directly at the brightness of the sun, so would our whole nature be destroyed by an unveiled sight of the brilliancy of the glory of God."<sup>550</sup>

God did grant Moses a greater revelation of Himself, even though it was a limited revelation. This revelation helped Moses fulfill his duty as a

---

<sup>546</sup>See Henry Mowvley, "John 1:14-18 in the light of Exodus 33:7—34:35," *The Expository Times* 95:5 (February 1984):135-37.

<sup>547</sup>Ronald B. Allen, "The Pillar of the Cloud," *Bibliotheca Sacra* 153:612 (October-December 1996):393.

<sup>548</sup>Durham, p. 443.

<sup>549</sup>*Ibid.*, p. 446.

<sup>550</sup>Keil and Delitzsch, 2:237.

mediator by giving him a greater appreciation for the person of Yahweh (cf. 2 Cor. 12:4). This is what all the leaders of God's people need (cf. Phil. 3:8-10).

". . . though Yahweh does indeed come to Moses in theophany, what he gives to Moses is quite specifically *not* the *sight* of this beauty, his glory, his Presence—that, indeed, he pointedly denies. What he gives rather is a *description*, and at that, a description not of how he *looks* but of how he *is*."<sup>551</sup>

### **3. The renewal of the covenant ch. 34**

Moses had obtained God's promise to renew the covenant bond with Israel (33:14). Now God directed him to restore the covenant revelation by recopying the Ten Commandments on two new stone tablets. God both provided and wrote on the first tablets, but Moses provided and God wrote on the second set of tablets.

"As Moses had restored the covenant through his energetic intercession, he should also provide the materials for the renewal of the covenant record, and bring them to God, for Him to complete and confirm the record by writing the covenant words upon the tables."<sup>552</sup>

Again Moses stayed 40 days and nights in the mountain (v. 28), but this time Joshua did not accompany him.

"Israel's initial relationship with God at Sinai, characterized by the patriarchal simplicity of the Covenant Code [Exod. 20:22—23:33], is now represented by the complex and restrictive laws of the Code of the Priests [Exod. 35—Lev. 16]."<sup>553</sup>

34:1-9        The text does not record what Moses saw of God's self-revelation (33:18), but it does tell us what he heard. Moses stressed the mercy of God in this exposition of God's name, Yahweh (cf. 29:5-6).

"There is nothing more terrible than the way in which sin clings to a man and dogs his footsteps. Let a man once steal, and he is never trusted again, even though he has made reparation for it. Men look at their fallen brothers through their sin; but God looks at man through the idealised [*sic*] life, with a love that imputes to him every virtue for Christ's sake."<sup>554</sup>

---

<sup>551</sup>Durham, p. 452.

<sup>552</sup>Keil and Delitzsch, 2:240.

<sup>553</sup>Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch . . .*, p. 48.

<sup>554</sup>Meyer, pp. 448-49.

Moses' response to God's gracious revelation was submission and worship (v. 8).<sup>555</sup>

Encouraged by this revelation Moses requested again (cf. 33:15) that God would dwell in the midst of Israel and lead His people into the Promised Land (v. 9). He besought the Lord again to re-establish His covenant acknowledging the sinfulness of the Israelites with whom he humbly identified.

34:10-26 In response God announced that He would restore the covenant. That is, He would establish the covenant again. Furthermore He would perform miracles never before seen, namely, driving out the Canaanites (v. 1).

To remind the Israelites of their duties in the covenant relationship, God repeated two of the fundamental ordinances (chs. 21—23) that would determine their attitude toward Him.

1. They were to make no covenants with the Canaanites but drive them out completely (vv. 11-16). The Israelites were to live by only one covenant: their covenant with Yahweh at Sinai.
2. They were to worship God as He had specified (vv. 17-26) rather than as they thought best. Their failure in this had resulted in the worship of the golden calf.

34:27-28 God re-established the Mosaic Covenant when He had set these principles forth.

"The tangible token of the renewal is the handing over of two tables of the testimony like the first, which had been shattered at the time when the original covenant had been annulled. The ceremony was to be similar to the first one, but not so festive, just as the second wedding of one who marries his divorced wife is not quite the same as the first. The break has been healed, but it is not possible to undo the fact that at some time the break had existed."<sup>556</sup>

34:29-35 The transformation that Moses experienced as a result of his close fellowship with God showed in his physical appearance, particularly on his face (cf. Matt. 17:1-3). This change made the other Israelites uncomfortable around him. The evidence of his close relationship with God convicted them. Evidently Moses' shining face was evidence to the Israelites that he had been in the Lord's presence and that what he told

---

<sup>555</sup>See J. Carl Laney, "God's Self-Revelation in Exodus 34:6-8," *Bibliotheca Sacra* 158:629 (January-March 2001):36-51.

<sup>556</sup>Cassuto, pp. 437-38. On the practice of fasting, see Kent D. Berghuis, "A Biblical Perspective on Fasting," *Bibliotheca Sacra* 158:629 (January-March 2001):86-103.

them was an oracle from God. The purpose of the veil that Moses wore over his face while speaking with the Israelites at other times was to hide the fact that the glory was fading (2 Cor. 3:13).

"The physical nature of this phenomenon must remain a mystery, but its theological meaning is crystal clear. Moses, as covenant mediator, was authenticated as such by his resemblance to the God of glory whom he represented. It is precisely for this reason that Moses and Elijah shared the radiance of the transfigured Jesus (Luke 9:31-32)."<sup>557</sup>

The Hebrew word translated "shone" is unusual and is related to the word translated "horn," meaning "rayed." In the Latin Vulgate, Jerome translated the clause in light of the basic meaning of the root word: "horned." This led some ancient painters to represent Moses in art with horns coming out of his head.

"Henceforth, the covenant that God makes with Israel will focus on the role of the mediator. Through him God will display his glory to his people."<sup>558</sup>

The covenant as renewed rested on the separation of the people from the nations that God would drive out. The realization of the blessings that God promised depended on the Israelites' obedience to this command.

The blessing of God's people rests on the faithful lovingkindness of God and the intercession of their leaders, Jesus Christ and human leaders. We cannot stress too much the importance of the kind of intercession that Moses modeled on this occasion. If God has given you a ministry of leadership, your intercession for those you lead or your lack of it will directly affect their welfare.

#### **E. THE CONSTRUCTION AND DEDICATION OF THE OBJECTS USED IN ISRAEL'S WORSHIP CHS. 35—40**

The renewal of the covenant made the erection of the tabernacle possible. Here begins what scholars refer to as the Code of the Priests (Exod. 35—Lev. 16). Having broken the covenant once, God proceeded to give His people more stringent requirements.

". . . the Code of the Priests sought to ensure Israel's obedience through an elaborate system of priestly requirements. As the Sinai narrative [Exod. 19—Num. 10] unfolds, then, the simple 'everyman's' altar of the Covenant Code (Ex 20:24-25) gives way to the singular and more elaborate bronze altar of the tabernacle (Ex 27:1-8; 38:1-7), one that was to be used solely by the priests (Lev 1ff.)."<sup>559</sup>

<sup>557</sup>Merrill, "A Theology . . .," p. 56. Cf. Durham, p. 468.

<sup>558</sup>Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch . . .*, p. 317.

<sup>559</sup>Ibid., pp. 58-59.

"The similarities of Exod 25—31 and 35—40 may all be accounted for on the basis of their rootage in this all-encompassing theme: both sections, each in its own way, are preoccupied with Israel's need to experience the reality of Yahweh's Presence."<sup>560</sup>

### **1. Preparations for construction 35:1—36:7**

Following the restoration of the covenant, Moses announced God's directions for the construction of the tabernacle. In building it the Israelites were to work only six days a week. They were to rest on the Sabbath (35:2-3).

"Kindling a fire receives special attention here because the people thought that kindling a fire was not a work, but only a preparation for some kind of work. But the Law makes sure that this too was not done."<sup>561</sup>

Moses invited the people to bring their contributions for the construction (35:4-19; cf. 25:1-9). These materials would have been the Israelites' own goods. Some were items the Egyptians had given them when they left Egypt and possessions they had obtained from traders they had met during their travels since leaving Egypt.

The people began to bring what the builders needed (35:20-29). Moses again recognized Bezalel and Oholiab as skillful artisans whom God had gifted and appointed to lead the construction work (35:30—36:2). This provision by God inspired the people to give even more, so much so that Moses had to tell the people to stop giving (31:3-7). The people proved their commitment to the covenant and to Yahweh by their generous contributions to the project that He had ordered.<sup>562</sup>

### **2. Execution of the work 36:8—39:43**

Moses described the directions for constructing the tabernacle and its furnishings earlier (chs. 25—31). I will simply give a breakdown of the individual items here with references and parallel references (cf. also 35:11-19).

#### **The tabernacle 36:8-38**

The hangings and coverings 36:8-19 (cf. 26:1-14)

The boards and bars 36:20-34 (cf. 26:15-30)

The veil and screen 36:35-38 (cf. 26:31-37)

"The order of recounting the construction of the parts of the tabernacle is not the same as that of the instructions in Exodus 25—30. . . . The purpose for this change is perhaps to begin with, and thus highlight, the part of the

<sup>560</sup>Durham, p. 474.

<sup>561</sup>The NET Bible note on 35:3.

<sup>562</sup>See Dwayne H. Adams, "The Building Program that Works (Exodus 25:4—36:7 [31:1-11])," *Exegesis and Exposition* 1:1 (Fall 1986):82-92.

work that involved 'all the skilled workers' before moving on to that work which involved only Bezalel. Thus the picture given at the beginning of the narrative is that of the total participation of all the people."<sup>563</sup>

### **The furniture, vessels, and courtyard 37:1—38:20**

- The ark of the covenant 37:1-9 (cf. 25:10-22)
- The table of showbread 37:10-16 (cf. 25:23-30)
- The lampstand 37:17-24 (cf. 25:31-40)
- The altar of incense 37:25-28 (cf. 30:1-10)
- The anointing oil and incense 37:29 (cf. 30:22-28)
- The brazen altar 38:1-7 (cf. 27:1-8)
- The laver 38:8 (cf. 30:17-21)
- The courtyard 38:9-20 (cf. 27:9-19)

### **The raw materials 38:21-31**

Moses also recorded an estimate of the amount of metal used (38:21-31). Coined money did not exist until the eighth century B.C. when the Lydians in Anatolia (modern Turkey) invented it.<sup>564</sup> Consequently the shekel Moses referred to was a measure of weight (not quite half an ounce).<sup>565</sup> The materials included slightly over a ton of gold (v. 24), almost four tons of silver (vv. 25-28), and about two and a half tons of bronze (vv. 29-31).

### **The priests' clothing 39:1-31**

Moses described the preparation of the priests' clothes at length, as is appropriate in view of their importance.<sup>566</sup>

- The ephod 39:2-7 (cf. 28:6-12)
- The breastplate 39:8-21 (cf. 28:15-29)
- The robe 39:22-26 (cf. 28:31-34)
- The other accessories 39:27-31 (cf. 28:39-40, 42)

Note the repetition of the fact that the craftsmen followed the Lord's instructions to Moses precisely (vv. 1, 5, 7, 21, 26, 29, 31).

### **Presentation to Moses 39:32-43**

The builders and craftsmen then presented the finished tabernacle items to Moses. The fact that he listed them again in the text reflects their importance. The statement that they did their work just as God had commanded Moses brackets the section (vv. 32, 42). As in

<sup>563</sup>Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch . . .*, p. 318.

<sup>564</sup>*The New Bible Dictionary*, 1962 ed., s.v. "Money," by A. F. Walls.

<sup>565</sup>*Unger's Bible Dictionary*, 3<sup>rd</sup> ed., s.v. "Metrology," by E. McChesney, revised by Merrill F. Unger, pp. 720-25.

<sup>566</sup>See John E. Johnson, "The Old Testament Offices as Paradigm for Pastoral Identity," *Bibliotheca Sacra* 152:606 (April-June 1995):182-200.

the Creation narrative (Gen. 1:28), a blessing concludes the tabernacle construction narrative (v. 43).

"The readiness and liberality with which the people had presented the gifts required for this work, and the zeal which they had shown in executing the whole of the work in rather less than half a year (see at 40:17), were most cheering signs of the willingness of the Israelites to serve the Lord, for which they could not fail to receive the blessing of God."<sup>567</sup>

The sections of Exodus dealing with the tabernacle are a fruitful field for study.<sup>568</sup>

### **3. The erection and consecration of the tabernacle ch. 40**

The Israelites erected the tabernacle on the first day of the first month, almost exactly one year after the Israelites left Egypt (vv. 2, 17). This was about nine months after Israel had arrived at Mt. Sinai (cf. 19:1).

First, the text narrates God's command to erect the tabernacle (vv. 1-15). Moses' obedience to this command follows (vv. 16-33). Seven times in this chapter we read that Moses did exactly as the Lord commanded him (vv. 19, 21, 23, 25, 26, 29, 32; cf. Heb. 3:5).

"The writer's careful attention to the chronology of the events is important, for it shows that the restriction of the offering of the Passover lamb to the central worship center (Dt 16:1-8) could thus have already been carried out during this first celebration of the Passover in the wilderness."<sup>569</sup>

When the tabernacle stood complete, God descended in the cloud that so filled the tabernacle that neither Moses nor anyone else could enter it (vv. 34-39). The Jews called this cloud that indicated the special presence of God the *shekinah* (lit. residence, i.e., of God). This term does not appear in the Old Testament but in the Targums. The Targums are explanations of the Hebrew Scriptures written later in the Aramaic language for the benefit of Jews who, because of the Babylonian captivity, had not learned Hebrew.

Finally God was dwelling among His people. His redemption of them was now complete. He had liberated them from bondage in Egypt (chs. 1—15) and adopted them as His special treasure (chs. 15—40). He had made a covenant with them and now blessed them with His presence. He would guide them from then on "throughout all their journeys" (vv. 36, 38). The descent of God to take up residence in the midst of His people is therefore a fitting climax with which this book closes.

Moses, however, was not able to enter the tabernacle because of the cloud (v. 34). This indicates that more provisions were necessary before fellowship with God could continue. Leviticus explains those provisions.

---

<sup>567</sup>Keil and Delitzsch, 2:255.

<sup>568</sup>See Paul F. Kiene, *The Tabernacle of God in the Wilderness*. This book contains many color pictures of a model as well as explanations of the furniture, priestly garments, etc.

<sup>569</sup>Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch . . .*, pp. 321-22.

## Conclusion

The major message of this book is that Yahweh is the sovereign God who provides deliverance for people from the slavery in which they find themselves. Moses revealed God's methods of providing salvation in Exodus.

His method of dealing with the whole human race was to create a pattern in the nation of Israel of how glorious it can be to live under the government of Yahweh. His method of dealing with Israel was by revealing Himself in power and glory. God intended this revelation to produce the double reaction of obedience (horizontally) and worship (vertically) in the Israelites. God's method of dealing with individuals was by providing opportunities to obey and experience blessing or to disobey and experience chastisement.

God's purposes as revealed in Exodus are continually moving forward. People's actions such as disobedience, apostasy, and rebellion affect God's purposes, but they never frustrate them. Man's actions in Exodus fail apart from God's grace. This fact demonstrates that in both his nature and practice man is a congenital sinner.

God's grace in choosing Israel and blessing her with deliverance, adoption, and His abiding presence stands out clearly in Exodus, especially in view of Israel's ingratitude and rebelliousness.

"Exodus contains some of the richest, foundational theology of all the books in the OT. Preeminently, it lays the foundations for a theology of God's revelation of his person, his redemption, his law, and his worship. It also initiates the great institution of the priesthood and the role of the prophet and formalizes the covenant relationship between God and his people."<sup>570</sup>

"With Yahweh's Presence promised, then demonstrated, then given to Israel in theophany at Sinai, the first half of Exodus ends. The second half of the book is preoccupied with response to that Presence, in life, in covenant, in worship, and even in disobedience. The largest part of that second half has to do with the communication to Israel of the reality of that Presence, through a series of set-apart places, set-apart objects and set-apart acts, all of them intimately connected, in one way or another, with Yahweh's Presence."<sup>571</sup>

---

<sup>570</sup>Kaiser, "Exodus," p. 292.

<sup>571</sup>Durham, p. 501.

## Appendix

| THE HEBREW CALENDAR <sup>572</sup> |                   |                    |                   |        |                            |                       |   |
|------------------------------------|-------------------|--------------------|-------------------|--------|----------------------------|-----------------------|---|
| Name of Month                      |                   | Number of Month    |                   | Day(s) | Festival                   | Modern Month          | Agricultural Season                                       |
| <i>Pre-exile</i>                   | <i>Post-exile</i> | <i>Sacred Year</i> | <i>Civil Year</i> |        |                            |                       |   |
| Abib                               | Nisan             | 1                  | 7                 | 1      | New Moon                   | March/<br>April       | Spring Equinox  |
|                                    |                   |                    |                   | 14     | Passover                   |                       | Occasional Sirocco  |
|                                    |                   |                    |                   | 15-21  | Unleavened Bread           |                       | Latter rains; flood season; beginning of barley season    |
|                                    |                   |                    |                   | 16     | Firstfruits                |                       | Flax Harvest  |
|                                    |                   |                    |                   | 21     | Holy Convocation           |                       |   |
| Ziv                                | Iyyar             | 2                  | 8                 |        |                            | April/May             | Dry season begins; apricots ripen                         |
|                                    | Sivan             | 3                  | 9                 | 7      | Pentecost (Feast of Weeks) | May/June              | Wheat harvest begins; dry winds; early figs; grapes ripen |
|                                    | Tammuz            | 4                  | 10                |        |                            | June/July             | Hot, dry season; grape harvest                            |
|                                    | Ab                | 5                  | 11                |        |                            | July/<br>August       | Air still; heat intense; olive harvest                    |
|                                    | Elul              | 6                  | 12                |        |                            | August/<br>September  | Dates and summer figs                                     |
| Ethanim                            | Tishri            | 7                  | 1                 | 1      | Feast of Trumpets          | September/<br>October | Early (former) rains                                      |
|                                    |                   |                    |                   | 10     | Day of Atonement           |                       | Heavy dews  |
|                                    |                   |                    |                   | 15-21  | Feast of Tabernacles       |                       | Plowing; seed time  |
|                                    |                   |                    |                   | 22     | Solemn Assembly            |                       |   |

---

<sup>572</sup>Davis, p. 142.

| THE HEBREW CALENDAR (CONT.) |                   |                    |                   |        |                |                       |   |
|-----------------------------|-------------------|--------------------|-------------------|--------|----------------|-----------------------|---|
| Name of Month               |                   | Number of Month    |                   | Day(s) | Festival       | Modern Month          | Agricultural Season                               |
| <i>Pre-exile</i>            | <i>Post-exile</i> | <i>Sacred Year</i> | <i>Civil Year</i> |        |                |                       |   |
| Bul                         | Heshvan           | 8                  | 2                 |        |                | October/<br>November  | Rains; winter figs; wheat and barley sown         |
|                             | Chislev           | 9                  | 3                 | 25     | Dedication     | November/<br>December | Winter begins; pastures become green              |
|                             | Tebeth            | 10                 | 4                 |        |                | December/<br>January  | Coldest month; rains; snow on high ground         |
|                             | Shebat            | 11                 | 5                 |        |                | January/<br>February  | Growing warmer; almond trees blossom              |
|                             | Adar              | 12                 | 6                 | 15     | Feast of Purim | February/<br>March    | Spring (latter) rains begin; citrus fruit harvest |

## Bibliography

- Adams, Dwayne H. "The Building Program that Works (Exodus 25:4--36:7 [31:1-11])." *Exegesis and Exposition* 1:1 (Fall 1986):82-92.
- Aharoni, Yohanan. "Kadesh-Barnea and Mount Sinai." In *God's Wilderness: Discoveries in Sinai*, pp. 115-70. Edited by B. Rothenberg, Y. Aharoni, and A Hashimshoni. New York: Thomas Nelson & Sons, 1962.
- Aharoni, Yohanan, and Michael Avi-Yonah. *The Macmillan Bible Atlas*. Revised ed. New York: Macmillan Publishing Co., 1977.
- Albright, William Foxwell. *The Archaeology of Palestine*. 1949. Revised ed. Pelican Archaeology series. Harmondsworth, Middlesex, England: Penguin Books, 1956.
- \_\_\_\_\_. "Northwest-Semitic Names in a List of Egyptian Slaves from the Eighteenth Century B.C." *Journal of the American Oriental Society* 74 (1954):222-33.
- Aldrich, Roy L. "The Mosaic Ten Commandments Compared to Their Restatements in the New Testament." *Bibliotheca Sacra* 118:471 (July-September 1961):251-58.
- Alexander, John F. "Sabbath Rest." *The Other Side* 146 (November 1983):8-9.
- Aling, Charles F. "The Biblical City of Ramses." *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society* 25:2 (June 1982):129-37.
- Allen, Ronald B. "The 'Bloody Bridegroom' in Exodus 4:24-26." *Bibliotheca Sacra* 153:611 (July-September 1996):259-69.
- \_\_\_\_\_. "The Pillar of the Cloud." *Bibliotheca Sacra* 153:612 (October-December 1996):387-95.
- Anati, Emmanuel. "Has Mt. Sinai Been Found?" *Biblical Archaeology Review* 11:4 (July-August 1985):42-57.
- Archer, Gleason L., Jr. "Old Testament History and Recent Archaeology from Abraham to Moses." *Bibliotheca Sacra* 127:505 (January-March 1970):3-25.
- \_\_\_\_\_. "Old Testament History and Recent Archaeology from Moses to David." *Bibliotheca Sacra* 127:506 (April-June 1970):99-115.
- \_\_\_\_\_. *A Survey of Old Testament Introduction*. Revised ed. Chicago: Moody Press, 1974.
- Bacchiocchi, Samuele. "Sabbatical Typologies of Messianic Redemption." *Journal for the Study of Judaism* 17:2 (December 1986):153-76.
- Baldwin, Joyce G. "The Role of the Ten Commandments." *Vox Evangelica* 13 (1983):7-18.
- Barlow, Robert Andres. "The Passover Seder." *Exegesis and Exposition* 3:1 (Fall 1988):63-68.

- Batto, Bernard F. "Red Sea or Reed Sea?" *Biblical Archaeology Review* 10:4 (July-August 1984):57-63.
- Beale, G. K. "An Exegetical and Theological Consideration of the Hardening of Pharaoh's Heart in Exodus 4-14 and Romans 9." *Trinity Journal* 5NS:2 (Autumn 1984):129-54.
- Beit-Arieh, Itzhaq. "Fifteen Years in Sinai." *Biblical Archaeology Review* 10:4 (July-August 1984):28-54.
- Beitzel, Barry J. *The Moody Atlas of Bible Lands*. Chicago: Moody Press, 1985.
- Berghuis, Kent D. "A Biblical Perspective on Fasting." *Bibliotheca Sacra* 158:629 (January-March 2001):86-103.
- Bimson, John J. "Redating the Exodus." *Biblical Archaeology Review* 13:5 (September-October 1986):40-53, 66-68.
- \_\_\_\_\_. *Redating the Exodus and the Conquest*. JSOT supplement series. Sheffield: University of Sheffield Press, 1978.
- Blosser, Oliver R. "Did the Pharaoh of the Exodus Drown in the Red Sea?" *It's About Time* (July 1987), pp. 8-12.
- \_\_\_\_\_. "The Impact of the Ten Plagues and Mosaic Monotheism on the Religion of Akenaton: Part I." *It's About Time* (July 1987), pp. 3-7.
- Bodenheimer, F. S. "The Manna of Sinai." *Biblical Archaeologist* 10:1 (February 1947):2-6.
- Booij, Thijs. "Mountain and Theophany in the Sinai Narrative." *Biblica* 65:1 (1984):1-26.
- Brichto, Herbert Chanan. "The Worship of the Golden Calf: A Literary Analysis of a Fable on Idolatry." *Hebrew Union College Annual* 54 (1983):1-44.
- Bright, John. *A History of Israel*. Philadelphia: Westminster Press, 1959.
- Budge, E. A. W. *The Gods of the Egyptians*. New York: Dover Press, 1969.
- Bunn, John T. "The Ark of the Covenant." *Biblical Illustrator* 9:4 (Summer 1983):50-53.
- Burden, Jasper J. "A Stylistic Analysis of Exodus 15:1-21: Theory and Practice." *OTWSA* 29 (1986):34-70.
- Bury, J. B.; S. A. Coombs; and F. E. Adcock, eds. *The Cambridge Ancient History*. 12 vols. 2nd ed. Reprinted. Cambridge: University Press, 1928.
- Bush, George. *Notes on Exodus*. 2 vols. Reprint ed. Minneapolis: James and Klock, 1976.
- Cassuto, Umberto. *A Commentary on the Book of Exodus*. Translated by Israel Abrahams. Reprinted. English ed. Jerusalem: Magnes Press, 1983.
- Childs, Brevard S. *The Book of Exodus*. The Old Testament Library series. Philadelphia: Westminster Press, 1974.

- Chirichigno, G. C. "The Narrative Structure of Exod 19-24." *Biblia* 68:4 (1987):457-79.
- Chisholm, Robert B., Jr. "Divine Hardening in the Old Testament." *Bibliotheca Sacra* 153:612 (October-December 1996):410-34.
- \_\_\_\_\_. "Does God 'Change His Mind'?" *Bibliotheca Sacra* 152:608 (October-December 1995):387-99.
- \_\_\_\_\_. "The Polemic against Baalism in Israel's Early History and Literature." *Bibliotheca Sacra* 151:603 (July-September 1994):267-83.
- Chismar, Douglas E. and David A Raush. "Regarding Theonomy: An Essay of Concern." *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society* 27:3 (September 1984):315-23.
- Clapham, Phillip. "In Search of the Exodus." *Catastrophism and Ancient History* 8:2 (July 1986):97-133.
- Clapp, Rodney. "Democracy as Heresy." *Christianity Today* 31:3 (February 20, 1987):17-23.
- Cole, R. Alan. *Exodus: An Introduction and Commentary*. Tyndale Old Testament Commentary series. Downers Grove: InterVarsity Press, 1973.
- Congdon, Robert N. "Exodus 21:22-25 and the Abortion Debate." *Bibliotheca Sacra* 146:582 (April-June 1989):132-47.
- Constable, Thomas L. "What Prayer Will and Will Not Change." In *Essays in Honor of J. Dwight Pentecost*. Edited by Stanley D. Toussaint and Charles H. Dyer. Chicago: Moody Press, 1986.
- Cox, Dorian G. Coover. "The Hardening of Pharaoh's Heart in Its Literary and Cultural Contexts." *Bibliotheca Sacra* 163:651 (July-September 2006):292-311.
- Craigie, Peter C. *The Problem of War in the Old Testament*. Grand Rapids: Wm. B. Eerdmans Publishing Co., 1978.
- \_\_\_\_\_. *Ugarit and the Old Testament*. Grand Rapids: Wm. B. Eerdmans Publishing Co., 1983.
- Cross, Frank Moore, Jr. "The Song of the Sea and Canaanite Myth." In *God and Christ: Existence and Province*, pp. 1-25. Edited by Robert W. Funk. New York: Harper and Row, 1968.
- \_\_\_\_\_. "The Tabernacle." *Biblical Archaeologist* 10:3 (September 1947):45-68.
- Curtis, Edward M. "The Theological Basis for the Prohibition of Images in the Old Testament." *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society* 28:3 (September 1985):277-87.
- Dalman, Rodger. "Egypt and Early Israel's Cultural Setting: A Quest for Evidential Possibilities." *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society* 51:3 (September 2008):449-88.

- Darby, John Nelson. *Synopsis of the Books of the Bible*. Revised ed. 5 vols. New York: Loizeaux Brothers Publishers, 1942.
- Davis, John J. *Moses and the Gods of Egypt*. Grand Rapids: Baker Book House, 1971.
- Deere, Jack S. "Deuteronomy." In *The Bible Knowledge Commentary: Old Testament*, pp. 259-324. Edited by John F. Walvoord and Roy B. Zuck. Wheaton: Scripture Press Publications, Victor Books, 1985.
- DeHaan, Martin Ralph. *The Chemistry of the Blood and Other Stirring Messages*. 2nd ed. Grand Rapids: Zondervan Publishing House, 1943.
- Deist, F. E. "Who is to blame: the Pharaoh, Yahweh or circumstance? On human responsibility, and divine ordinance in Exodus 1—14." *OTWSA* 29(1986):91-110.
- Dennett, Edward. *Typical Teachings of Genesis*. London: G. Morrish, n.d.
- Dennison, James T., Jr. "The Exodus: Historical Narrative, Prophetic Hope, Gospel Fulfillment." *Covenant Seminary Review* 8:2 (Fall 1982):1-12.
- Dictionary of the Bible*, ed. by James Hastings, 1909 ed. S.v. "Tabernacle," by A. R. S. Kennedy.
- Dillow, Joseph C. *The Reign of the Servant Kings*. Miami Springs, Fl.: Schoettle Publishing Co., 1992.
- Dumbrell, William J. *Covenant and Creation*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers, 1984.
- Dunnam, Maxie D. *Exodus*. The Communicator's Commentary series. Waco: Word Books, 1987.
- Dunnett, Dolores E. "Evangelicals and Abortion." *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society* 33:2 (June 1990):215-25.
- Durham, John I. *Exodus*. Word Biblical Commentary series. Waco: Word Books, 1987.
- Dyer, Charles H. "The Date of the Exodus Reexamined." *Bibliotheca Sacra* 140:559 (July-September 1983):225-43.
- Dyer, Charles H., and Eugene H. Merrill. *The Old Testament Explorer*. Nashville: Word Publishing, 2001. Reissued as *Nelson's Old Testament Survey*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers, 2001.
- Ellison, H. L. *Exodus*. Daily Study Bible series. Philadelphia: Westminster Press, 1982.
- Encyclopaedia Judaica*. S.v. "Cuneiform Law," by J. Finkelstein, 16:1505i.
- Exum, J. Cheryl. "'You Shall Let Every Daughter Live': A Study of Exodus 1:8—2:10." *Semeia* 28 (1983):63-82.
- Fass, David E. "The Molten Calf: Judgment, Motive, and Meaning." *Judaism* 39:2 (Spring 1990):171-83.

- Fawver, Jay D., and R. Larry Overstreet. "Moses and Preventive Medicine." *Bibliotheca Sacra* 147:587 (July-September):270-85.
- Fensham, F. C. "Extra-Biblical Material and the Hermeneutics of the Old Testament with Special Reference to the Legal Material of the Covenant Code." *OTWSA* 20 & 21 (1977 & 78):53-65.
- Finegan, Jack. *Let My People Go*. New York: Harper & Row Publishers, 1963.
- Finkelstein, Israel. "Raider of the Lost Mountain—An Israeli Archaeologist Looks at the Most Recent Attempt to Locate Mt. Sinai." *Biblical Archaeology Review* 15:4 (July-August 1988):46-50.
- Frankfort, Henri. *Ancient Egyptian Religion*. New York: Columbia University Press, 1948; reprint ed., New York: Harper and Row; Harper Torchbooks, 1961.
- Franz, Gordon. "Mt. Sinai Is Not Jebel El-Lawz in Saudi Arabia." A paper presented at the Annual Meeting of the Evangelical Theological Society, 15 November 2001, Colorado Springs, Colo.
- Free, Joseph P. *Archaeology and Bible History*. 5th ed. revised. Wheaton: Scripture Press, 1956.
- Fruchtenbaum, Arnold G. "Israel and the Church." In *Issues in Dispensationalism*, pp. 113-30. Edited by Wesley R. Willis and John R. Master. Chicago: Moody Press, 1994.
- \_\_\_\_\_. "The Sabbath Controversy." *Biblical Research Monthly* 49:4 (July-August 1984):14-16.
- Gardner, Joseph L., ed. *Reader's Digest Atlas of the Bible*. Pleasantville, N.Y.: Reader's Digest Association, 1985.
- Gevirtz, Stanley. "Heret, in the Manufacture of the Golden Calf." *Biblica* 65 (1984):377-81.
- Gianotti, Charles R. "The Meaning of the Divine Name YHWH." *Bibliotheca Sacra* 142:565 (January-March 1985):38-51.
- Gispen, William H. *Exodus*. Translated by Ed van der Maas. Bible Student's Commentary series. Grand Rapids: Zondervan Publishing House, 1982.
- Gnuse, Robert. "Jubilee Legislation in Leviticus: Israel's Vision of Social Reform." *Biblical Theology Bulletin* 15:2 (April 1985):43-48.
- Goldberg, Michael. "Expository Articles: Exodus 1:13-14." *Interpretation* 37:4 (October 1983):389-91.
- Gottwald, Norman. *A Light to the Nations*. New York: Harper & Bros., 1959.
- Gunn, David M. "The 'Hardening of Pharaoh's Heart': Plot, Character and Theology in Exodus 1-14." In *Art and Meaning: Rhetoric in Biblical Literature*, pp. 72-96. Edited by David J. A. Clines, David M. Gunn, and Alan J. Hauser. Journal for the

- Study of the Old Testament Supplement Series, vol. 19. Sheffield: University of Sheffield, 1982.
- Gurney, O. R. *The Hittites*. Baltimore: Penguin Books, 1964.
- Habel, N. "The Form and Significance of the Call Narratives." *Zeitschrift für die Alttestamentliche Wissenschaft* 77 (1965):316-23.
- Hagin, Kenneth E. *Redeemed from Poverty, Sickness, and Death*. Tulsa: Faith Library Publications, 1983.
- Hannah, John D. "Exodus." In *The Bible Knowledge Commentary: Old Testament*, pp. 103-62. Edited by John F. Walvoord and Roy B. Zuck. Wheaton: Scripture Press Publications, Victor Books, 1985.
- Hasel, Gerhard F. "The Sabbath in the Pentateuch." In *The Sabbath in Scripture and History*, pp. 21-43. Edited by Kenneth A. Strand. Washington: Review and Herald Publishing Association, 1982.
- Hawkins, Ralph K. "The Date of the Exodus-Conquest Is Still an Open Question: A Response to Rodger Young and Bryant Wood." *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society* 51:2 (June 2008):245-66.
- Hays, J. Daniel "An Evangelical Approach to Old Testament Narrative Criticism." *Bibliotheca Sacra* 166:661 (January-March 2009):3-18.
- Hengstenberg, Ernst W. *Egypt and the Books of Moses*. Translated by R. D. C. Robbins. New York: M. H. Newman, 1843.
- Hiebert, D. Edmond. *Working with God: Scriptural Studies in Intercession*. New York: Carlton Press, Hearthstone Book, 1987.
- Hilber, John W. "Theology of Worship in Exodus 24." *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society* 39:2 (June 1996):177-89.
- Hindson, Edward E. *The Philistines and the Old Testament*. Baker Studies in Biblical Archaeology series. Grand Rapids: Baker Book House, 1983.
- Hoehner, Harold W. "The Duration of the Egyptian Bondage." *Bibliotheca Sacra* 126:504 (October-December 1969):306-16.
- Hoffmeier, James K. "What Is the Biblical Date for the Exodus? A Response to Bryant Wood." *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society* 50:2 (June 2007):225-47.
- Holmgren, Fredrick. "Before the Temple, the Thornbush: An Exposition of Exodus 2:11—3:12." *Reformed Journal* 33:3 (March 1983):9-11.
- Hopkins, Ezekiel. "Understanding the Ten Commandments." In *Classical Evangelical Essays in Old Testament Interpretation*, pp. 41-58. Edited by Walter C. Kaiser, Jr. Grand Rapids: Baker Book House, 1972.
- Hoppe, Leslie J. "Elders and Deuteronomy." *Eglise et Theologie* 14 (1983):259-72.

- Horn, Siegfried H. *Biblical Archaeology: A Generation of Discovery*. Washington: Biblical Archaeology Society, 1985.
- Hort, Greta. "The Plagues of Egypt." *Zeitschrift für die Alttestamentliche Wissenschaft* 69 (1957):84-103; 70 (1958):48-59.
- Houtman, C. "A Note on the LXX Version of Exodus 4,6." *Zeitschrift für die Alttestamentliche Wissenschaft* 97:2 (1983):253-54.
- \_\_\_\_\_. "On the Meaning of Uba'esim Uba'abanim in Exodus VII 19." *Vetus Testamentum* 36:3 (1986):347-52.
- Hughes, R. Kent. *Living on the Cutting Edge*. Westchester, Il.: Good News Publishers, Crossway Books, 1987.
- Hyatt, J. Philip. *Exodus*. New Century Bible Commentary series. London: Marshall, Morgan and Scott, 1971; reprint ed., Grand Rapids: William B. Eerdmans Publishing Co., 1983.
- Isser, Stanley. "Two Traditions: The Law of Exodus 21:22-23 Revisited." *Catholic Biblical Quarterly* 52:1 (January 1990):30-45.
- Jacob, Benno. *The Second Book of the Bible: Exodus*. Hoboken: KTAV, 1992.
- Johnson, John E. "The Old Testament Offices as Paradigm for Pastoral Identity." *Bibliotheca Sacra* 152:606 (April-June 1995):182-200.
- Johnson, Philip C. "Exodus." In *The Wycliffe Bible Commentary*, pp. 51-86. Edited by Charles F. Pfeiffer and Everett F. Harrison. Chicago: Moody Press, 1962.
- Johnston, Gordon H. "I Will Multiply Your Seed." *Exegesis and Exposition* 1:1 (Fall 1986):19-32.
- Josephus, Flavius. *The Works of Flavius Josephus*. Translated by William Whiston. *Antiquities of the Jews*. London: T. Nelson and Sons, 1866.
- Kaiser, Walter C., Jr. "Exodus." In *Genesis—Numbers*. Vol. 2 of *The Expositor's Bible Commentary*. 12 vols. Edited by Frank E. Gaebelein and Richard P. Polcyn. Grand Rapids: Zondervan Publishing House, 1990.
- \_\_\_\_\_. *Toward Old Testament Ethics*. Grand Rapids: Zondervan Publishing House, 1983.
- Kalland, Lloyd. "Fetal Life." *Eternity*, February 1971, pp. 18-21, 24.
- Keil, C. F., and Franz Delitzsch. *The Pentateuch*. 3 vols. Translated by James Martin. Biblical Commentary on the Old Testament. N.p.; reprint ed., Grand Rapids: Wm. B. Eerdmans Publishing Co., n.d.
- Kempinski, Aharon. "Jacob in History." *Biblical Archaeology Review* 14:1 (January-February 1988):42-47.
- Kennedy, James M. "The Social Background of Early Israel's Rejection of Cultic Images: A Proposal." *Biblical Theology Bulletin* 17:4 (October 1987):138-44.

- Kiene, Paul F. *The Tabernacle of God in the Wilderness*. Translated by John S. Crandall. Grand Rapids: Zondervan Publishing House, 1977.
- King, Geoffrey R. "Where Is the Ark of the Covenant?" *Prophetic Witness* 8:2 (February 1984):9-10.
- Kitchen, Kenneth A. *Ancient Orient and Old Testament*. Downers Grove: InterVarsity Press, 1966.
- \_\_\_\_\_. *The Bible In Its World*. Downers Grove: InterVarsity Press, 1977.
- \_\_\_\_\_. "Labour Conditions in the Egypt of the Exodus." *Buried History* 20:3 (September 1984):43-49.
- \_\_\_\_\_. "The Old Testament in its Context: 2 From Egypt to the Jordan." *Theological Students' Fellowship Bulletin* 60 (1971):3-11.
- Kline, Meredith G. "Comments on an Old-New Error." *Westminster Theological Journal* 41:1 (Fall 1978):172-89.
- \_\_\_\_\_. "Deuteronomy." In *The Wycliffe Bible Commentary*, pp. 155-204. Edited by Charles F. Pfeiffer and Everett F. Harrison. Chicago: Moody Press, 1962.
- \_\_\_\_\_. "The Feast of Cover-over." *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society* 37:4 (December 1994):497-510.
- \_\_\_\_\_. "Lex Talionis and the Human Fetus." *Simon Greenleaf Law Review* 5 (1985-86):75-89.
- \_\_\_\_\_. *The Treaty of the Great King*. Grand Rapids: Wm. B. Eerdmans Publishing Co., 1963.
- Kubo, Sakae. "Why then the law?" *Ministry* (March 1980), pp. 12-14.
- Labuschagne, C. J. *The Incomparability of Yahweh in the Old Testament*. Leiden: Brill, 1966.
- Laney, J. Carl. "God's Self-Revelation in Exodus 34:6-8." *Bibliotheca Sacra* 158:629 (January-March 2001):36-51.
- Lange, John Peter, ed. *Lange's Commentary on the Holy Scriptures*. 12 vols. Reprint ed., Grand Rapids: Zondervan Publishing House, 1960. Vol. 1: *Genesis-Leviticus*, by John Peter Lange and Frederic Gardiner. Translated by Tayler Lewis, A. Gosman, and Charles M. Mead.
- Lev, Mordecai J., ed. *Sepher Mitzvoth*. Jerusalem: Mossad Harav Kook, 1990.
- Lewis, C. S. *Mere Christianity*. New York: Macmillan, 1958.
- Lightner, Robert P. "Theological Perspectives on Theonomy." *Bibliotheca Sacra* 143:569 (January-March 1986):26-36; 570 (April-June 1986):134-45; 571 (July-September 1986):228-45.

- Livingston, G. Herbert. "A Case Study of the Call of Moses." *Asbury Theological Journal* 42:2 (Fall 1987):89-113.
- \_\_\_\_\_. *The Pentateuch in Its Cultural Environment*. Grand Rapids: Baker Book House, 1974.
- Loewenstamm, Samuel E. "The Making and Destruction of the Golden Calf." *Biblica* 48 (1967):481-90.
- \_\_\_\_\_. "The Making and Destruction of the Golden Calf—a Rejoinder." *Biblica* 56 (1975):330-43.
- Lubarsky, Sandra B. "Judaism and the Justification of Abortion for Non-Medical Reasons." *Journal of Reform Judaism* 31:4 (Fall 1984):1-13.
- M[ackintosh], C. H. *Notes on the Book of Exodus*. American ed. New York: Loizeaux Brothers, 1879.
- MacLurg, Jeffrey E. "An Ode to Joy: The Song of the Sea (Exodus 15:1-21)." *Exegesis and Exposition* 1:1 (Fall 1986):43-54.
- Magonet, Jonathan. "The Rhetoric of God: Exodus 6.2-8." *Journal for the Study of the Old Testament* 27 (1983):56-67.
- Marcus, David. "Juvenile Delinquency in the Bible and the Ancient Near East." *Journal of the Ancient Near Eastern Society of Columbia University* 13 (1981):31-52.
- Master, Jonathan. "Exodus 32 as an Argument for Traditional Theism." *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society* 45:4 (December 2002):585-98.
- Mazar, Amihai. "Bronze Bull Found in Israelite 'High Place' from the Time of the Judges." *Biblical Archaeology Review* 9:5 (September-October 1983):34-40.
- Mendenhall, George E. *Law and Covenant in Israel and the Ancient Near East*. Pittsburgh: Presbyterian Board of Colportage of Western Pennsylvania, 1955.
- Merrill, Eugene H. *Deuteronomy*. New American Commentary series. N.c.: Broadman & Holman Publishers, 1994.
- \_\_\_\_\_. *Kingdom of Priests*. Grand Rapids: Baker Book House, 1987.
- \_\_\_\_\_. "The Mosaic Covenant: A Proposal for Its Theological Significance." *Exegesis and Exposition* 3:1 (Fall 1988):25-33.
- \_\_\_\_\_. "A Theology of the Pentateuch." In *A Biblical Theology of the Old Testament*, pp. 7-87. Edited by Roy B. Zuck. Chicago: Moody Press, 1991.
- Meyer, Frederick Brotherton. *Devotional Commentary on Exodus*. London: Purnell, n.d.; reprint ed., Grand Rapids: Kregel Publications, 1981.
- Milgrom, Jacob. "'Thou Shalt Not Boil a Kid in It's Mother's Milk.'" *Bible Review* 1:3 (Fall 1985):48-55.

- Mills, Watson E. "Childbearing in Ancient Times." *Biblical Illustrator* 13:1 (Fall 1986):54-56.
- Minter, Steve. "Ten Timeless Words (Exodus 20:1-17)." *Exegesis and Exposition* 1:1 (Fall 1986):67-80.
- Mitchell, Bill. "Leviticus 24.6: The Bread of the Presence—Rows or Piles?" *Bible Translator* 33:4 (October 1982):447-48.
- Mitchell, T. C. "The Meaning of the Noun HTN in the Old Testament." *Vetus Testamentum* 19 (1969):93-112.
- Montet, Pierre. *Eternal Egypt*. Translated by Doreen Weightman. New York: New American Library, 1964.
- Morgan, G. Campbell. *Living Messages of the Books of the Bible*. 2 vols. New York: Fleming H. Revell Co., 1912.
- Morgan, J. P. "The Morality of Suicide: Issues and Options." *Bibliotheca Sacra* 148:590 (April-June 1991):214-30.
- Mowinckel, Sigmund. "The Name of the God of Moses." *Hebrew Union College Annual* 32 (1961):121-33.
- Mowvley, Henry. "John 1:14-18 in the Light of Exodus 33:7—34:35." *Expository Times* 95:5 (February 1984):135-37.
- Munro, John "Prayer to a Sovereign God." *Interest* 56:2 (February 1990):20-21.
- Myers, John V. "What Was Brimstone?" *Kronos* 9:1 (Fall 1983):57-60.
- Naville, Edouard. *The Store-City of Pithom and the Route of the Exodus*. London: Egypt Exploration Fund, 1885.
- The NET (New English Translation) Bible*. First beta printing. Spokane, Wash.: Biblical Studies Press, 2001.
- The New Bible Dictionary*. 1962 ed. S.v. "Money," by A. F. Walls.
- \_\_\_\_\_. S.v. "Plagues of Egypt," by Kenneth A. Kitchen.
- \_\_\_\_\_. S.v. "Red Sea," by Kenneth A. Kitchen.
- Nichol, Francis David, ed. *The Seventh-Day Adventist Bible Commentary*. 7 vols. Washington: Review and Herald Publishing Assoc., 1953-57.
- Nicholson, E. W. "The Decalogue As the Direct Address of God." *Vetus Testamentum* 27 (October 1977):422-33.
- Noordzij, A. *Numbers*. Translated by Ed van der Maas. Bible Student's Commentary series. Grand Rapids: Zondervan Publishing House, 1983.
- Nowell, Irene. "Sabbath: Sign of the Covenant." *The Bible Today* 24:6 (November 1986):376-80.

- Oosthuizen, M. J. "Some thoughts on the interpretation of Exodus 4:24-26." *OTWSA* 29(1986):1-30.
- Patterson, Richard D. "The Imagery of Clouds in the Scriptures." *Bibliotheca Sacra* 165:657 (January-March 2008):13-27.
- \_\_\_\_\_. "Victory at Sea: Prose and Poetry in Exodus 14—15." *Bibliotheca Sacra* 161:641 (January-March 2004):42-54.
- \_\_\_\_\_. "Wonders in the Heavens and on the Earth: Apocalyptic Imagery in the Old Testament." *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society* 43:3 (September 2000):385-403.
- Paul, Shalom. *Studies in the Book of the Covenant in the Light of Cuneiform and Biblical Law*. Leiden: Brill, 1970.
- Pentecost, J. Dwight. *A Faith That Endures: The Book of Hebrews Applied to the Real Issues of Life*. Grand Rapids: Discovery House Publishers, 1992.
- \_\_\_\_\_. "The Purpose of the Law." *Bibliotheca Sacra* 128:511 (July-September 1971):227-33.
- \_\_\_\_\_. *Thy Kingdom Come*. Wheaton: Scripture Press Publications, Victor Books, 1990.
- Perevolotsky, Aviram, and Israel Finkelstein. "The Southern Sinai Exodus Route in Ecological Perspective." *Biblical Archaeology Review* 11:4 (July-August 1985):26-41.
- Petrie, Flinders. *Egypt and Israel*. New York: E. S. Gorham, 1911.
- Pfeiffer, Charles F. *Ras Shamra and the Bible*. Grand Rapids: Baker Book House, 1962.
- Phillips, Anthony. *Ancient Israel's Criminal Law*. New York: Schocken, 1970.
- \_\_\_\_\_. "A Fresh Look at the Sinai Pericope." *Vetus Testamentum* 34 (January 1984): 39-52; 34 (July 1984):282-94.
- \_\_\_\_\_. "The Laws of Slavery: Exodus 21:2-11." *Journal for the Study of the Old Testament* 30 (October 1984):51-66.
- \_\_\_\_\_. "Some Aspects of Family Law in Pre-Exilic Israel." *Vetus Testamentum* 23 (1973):349-61.
- Pollock, Algernon J. *The Tabernacle's Typical Teaching*. London: Pickering & Inglis, n.d.
- Pritchard, James B., ed. *Ancient Near Eastern Texts Relating to the Old Testament*. 3rd ed. Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1969.
- Proffitt, T. D., III. "Moses and Anthropology: A New View of the Exodus." *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society* 27:1 (March 1984):19-25.
- Radday, Yehuda T. "The Spoils of Egypt." *Annual of the Swedish Theological Institute* 12 (1983):127-47.

- Ramey, William D. "The Great Escape (Exodus 14)." *Exegesis and Exposition* 1:1 (Fall 1986):33-42.
- Ramm, Bernard L. *His Way Out*. Glendale: Gospel Light Publications; Regal Books, 1974.
- Reviv, Hanoch. "The Traditions Concerning the Inception of the Legal System in Israel: Significance and Dating." *Zeitschrift fur die Alttestamentliche Wissenschaft* 94:4 (1982):566-75.
- Ridout, Samuel. *Lectures on the Tabernacle*. Bible Truth Library series. New York: Loizeaux Brothers Publishers, n.d.
- Robinson, Bernard P. "Symbolism in Exod. 15:22-27 (Marah and Elim)." *Revue Biblique* 94:3 (July 1987):376-88.
- \_\_\_\_\_. "Zipporah to the Rescue: A Contextual Study of Exodus IV 24-6." *Vetus Testamentum* 36:4 (October 1986):447-61.
- Rodriguez, Angel Manuel. "Sanctuary Theology in the Book of Exodus." *Andrews University Seminary Studies* 24:2 (Summer 1986):127-45.
- Rooker, Mark F. *Leviticus*. The New American Commentary series. Nashville: Broadman & Holman Publishers, 2000.
- Ross, Allen P. "When God Gives His People Bitter Water." *Exegesis and Exposition* 1:1 (Fall 1986):55-66.
- Rowley, Harold H. "Moses and the Decalogue." *Bulletin of the John Rylands Library of the University of Manchester* 34:1 (September 1951):81-118.
- Ryrie, Charles Caldwell. "The End of the Law." *Bibliotheca Sacra* 124:495 (July-September 1967):239-47.
- \_\_\_\_\_. *The Holy Spirit*. Chicago: Moody Press, 1965.
- Sailhamer, John H. "Exegetical Notes: Genesis 1:1—2:4a." *Trinity Journal* 5 NS (Spring 1984):73-82.
- \_\_\_\_\_. "The Mosaic Law and the Theology of the Pentateuch." *Westminster Theological Journal* 53 (Fall 1991):241-61.
- \_\_\_\_\_. *The Pentateuch as Narrative*. Grand Rapids: Zondervan Publishing House, 1992.
- Sarles, Ken L. "An Appraisal of the Signs and Wonders Movement." *Bibliotheca Sacra* 145:577 (January-March 1988):57-82.
- \_\_\_\_\_. "A Theological Evaluation of the Prosperity Gospel." *Bibliotheca Sacra* 143:572 (October-December 1986):329-52.
- Sarna, Nahum M. *Exodus*. Philadelphia: Jewish Publication Society, 1991.
- \_\_\_\_\_. "Exploring Exodus—The Oppression." *Biblical Archaeologist* 49:2 (June 1986):68-79.

- Sasson, J. M. "Circumcision in the Ancient Near East." *Journal of Biblical Literature* 85 (1966):473-76.
- Schwantes, Siegfried J. *A Short History of the Ancient Near East*. Grand Rapids: Baker Book House, 1965.
- Shafer, B. E., ed. *Religion in Ancient Egypt: Gods, Myths, and Personal Practice*. Ithica: Cornell University Press, 1991.
- Sheriffs, Deryck. "Moving on with God: Key motifs in Exodus 13—20." *Themelios* 15:2 (January-February 1990):49-60.
- Siker-Gieseler, Jeffrey. "The Theology of the Sabbath in the Old Testament: A Canonical Approach." *Studia Biblica et Theologica* 11:1 (April 1981):5-20.
- Soltau, Henry W. *The Tabernacle, the Priesthood and the Offerings*. London: Morgan and Scott, n.d.
- Speiser, E. A. "An Angelic 'Curse': Exodus 14:20." *Journal of the American Oriental Society* 80 (1960):198-200.
- Sprinkle, Joe M. "Law and Narrative in Exodus 19—24." *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society* 47:2 (June 2004):235-52.
- Spurgeon, Graham. "Is Abortion Murder?" In *The Religious Case for Abortion*, pp. 15-27. Edited by Hamilton Gregory. Asheville: Madison and Polk, 1983.
- Sring, Margit L. "The Horn-Motifs of the Bible and the Ancient Near East." *Andrews University Seminary Studies* 22:3 (Autumn 1984):327-40.
- Steuer, Axel D. "The Freedom of God and Human Freedom." *Scottish Journal of Theology* 36:2:163-80.
- Stiebing, William H., Jr. "Should the Exodus and the Israelite Settlement in Canaan Be Redated?" *Biblical Archaeology Review* 11:4 (July-August 1985):58-69.
- Strange, James F. "The Jewish Calendar." *Biblical Illustrator* 13:1 (Fall 1986):28-32.
- Strauss, Lehman. *The Eleven Commandments*. 2nd ed. Neptune, N.J.: Loizeaux Brothers, 1975.
- Student Map Manual*. Jerusalem: Pictorial Archive (Near Eastern History) Est., 1979.
- Tan, Paul Lee. *Principles of Literal Interpretation of the Bible*. By the Author, 1967.
- Tolhurst, A. H. "Whatever Happened to the Ark?" *Ministry*, June 1984, pp. 13-15.
- Unger, Merrill F. *Archaeology and the Old Testament*. Grand Rapids: Zondervan Publishing House, 1954.
- \_\_\_\_\_. *Biblical Demonology*. 7th ed. Wheaton: Scripture Press, 1967.
- \_\_\_\_\_. *Demons in the World Today*. Wheaton: Tyndale House Publishers, 1974.

- \_\_\_\_\_. "The Significance of the Sabbath." *Bibliotheca Sacra* 123:489 (January-March 1966):53-59.
- Unger's Bible Dictionary*, 3rd ed. S.v. "Cherub," by Merrill F. Unger.
- \_\_\_\_\_. S.v. "Metrology," by E. McChesney, revised by Merrill F. Unger.
- van der Meulen, Henry E. Faber. "One or two veils in front of the holy of holies?" *Theologia Evangelica* 18:1 (March 1985):22-27.
- Van Seters, John. *The Hyksos*. New Haven: Yale University Press, 1966.
- Voss, Robert J. "Who Am I That I Should Go? Exodus 3:11 (Ex. 2:25--4:18)." *Wisconsin Lutheran Quarterly* 80:4 (Fall 1983):243-47.
- Wagner, Maurice E. "How to Honor Your Parents When They've Hurt You." *Psychology for Living* 28:6 (June 1986):12-14.
- Waltke, Bruce K. "Cain and His Offering." *Westminster Theological Journal* 48:2 (Fall 1986):363-72.
- \_\_\_\_\_. *An Old Testament Theology*. Grand Rapids: Zondervan Publishing House, 2007.
- \_\_\_\_\_. "Palestinian Artifactual Evidence Supporting the Early Date of the Exodus." *Bibliotheca Sacra* 129:513 (January-March 1972):33-47.
- \_\_\_\_\_. "Reflections from the Old Testament on Abortion." *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society* 19:1 (Winter 1976):3-13.
- Walvoord, John F. *The Holy Spirit*. Wheaton, Ill.: Van Kampen Press, 1954; Findlay, Ohio: Dunham Publishing Co., 1958.
- \_\_\_\_\_. "The New Covenant." In *Integrity of Heart, Skillfulness of Hands*, pp. 186-200. Edited by Charles H. Dyer and Roy B. Zuck. Grand Rapids: Baker Book House, 1994.
- Ward, William A. *The Spirit of Ancient Egypt*. Beirut: Khayats, 1965.
- Watson, Thomas. *The Ten Commandments*. 1692. Reprint ed. Edinburgh: The Banner of Truth Trust, 1976.
- Wenham, Gordon J. *The Book of Leviticus*. New International Commentary on the Old Testament series. Grand Rapids: Wm. B. Eerdmans Publishing Co., 1979.
- Wenham, John W. *The Goodness of God*. Downers Grove: InterVarsity Press, 1974.
- Westcott, Brooke Foss. *The Epistle to the Hebrews*. Grand Rapids: Wm. B. Eerdmans Publishing Co., n.d.
- Whybray, R. Norman. *Introduction to the Pentateuch*. Grand Rapids: Wm. B. Eerdmans Publishing Co., 1995.
- Williams, Gary R. "The Purpose of Penology in the Mosaic Law and Today." *Bibliotheca Sacra* 133:529 (January-March 1976):42-55.

- Wilson, Robert Dick. "Yahweh (Jehovah) and Exodus 6:3." In *Classical Evangelical Essays in Old Testament Interpretation*, pp. 29-40. Edited by Walter C. Kaiser, Jr. Grand Rapids: Baker Book House, 1972.
- Wilson, Robert R. "The Hardening of Pharaoh's Heart." *Catholic Biblical Quarterly* 41:1 (1979):18-36.
- Winter, Ralph D. "The Growth of Israel in Egypt (The Phenomenon of Exponential Growth)." Paper published by the Institute of International Studies, Pasadena, Ca., 14 April 1993.
- Wolf, Herbert M. *An Introduction to the Old Testament Pentateuch*. Chicago: Moody Press, 1991.
- Wolinski, Arelene. "Egyptian Masks: The Priest and His Role." *Archaeology* 40:1 (January-February 1987):22-29.
- Wood, Bryant G. "The Rise and Fall of the 13th-Century Exodus-Conquest Theory." *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society* 48:3 (September 2005):475-89.
- \_\_\_\_\_. "The Biblical Date for the Exodus is 1446 BC: A Response to James Hoffmeier." *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society* 50:2 (June 2007):249-58.
- Wood, Leon J. *The Prophets of Israel*. Grand Rapids: Baker Book House, 1979.
- \_\_\_\_\_. *A Survey of Israel's History*. Grand Rapids: Zondervan Publishing House, 1970.
- Woudstra, Marten H. *The Book of Joshua*. New International Commentary on the Old Testament series. Grand Rapids: Wm. B. Eerdmans Publishing Co., 1981.
- Wright, G. Ernest. "The Significance of the Temple in the Ancient Near East." *Biblical Archaeologist* 7:4 (December 1944):65-77.
- Wyatt, N. "The Significance of the Burning Bush." *Vetus Testamentum* 36:3 (July 1986):361-65.
- Wyrick, Stephen Von. "Israel's Golden Calves." *Biblical Illustrator* 13:1 (Fall 1986):3-12.
- Young, Edward J. *My Servants the Prophets*. Grand Rapids: Wm. B. Eerdmans Publishing Co., 1952.
- Young, Rodger C., and Bryant G. Wood. "A Critical Analysis of the Evidence from Ralph Hawkins for a Late-Date Exodus-Conquest." *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society* 51:2 (June 2008):225-43.
- Youngblood, Ronald F. *Exodus*. Everyman's Bible Commentary series. Chicago: Moody Press, 1983.
- \_\_\_\_\_. "A New Look at an Old Problem: The Date of the Exodus." *Christianity Today* 26:20 (December 17, 1982):58, 60.
- Zuck, Roy B. "The Practice of Witchcraft in the Scriptures." *Bibliotheca Sacra* 128:512 (October-December 1971):352-60.